Charles the Grete.

Early English Text Society.
Extra Series. No. xxxvii.
1881.
THE ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. — IV

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,


EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY,

BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR PEREGRINAS," ETC.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL

MDCCCXXXI.
Extra Series,

XXXVII.

RUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.
INTRODUCTION.

The present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of Sir Ferumbras, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in Sir Ferumbras, The Sowltone of Babylone, Roland and Vernagu, and the Song of Roland.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshde in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, and the yere of our lord MCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring $\frac{23}{32}$ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial woodcut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of Fierabras, itself a compilation
partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work. One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: “Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil quatre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xxiour de nouemembre.” There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: “Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par mai-tre Guillaume le roy. Le cinequiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias.” It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

---

1 Introd. to *Sir Fierabras*, pp. vi, vii.
to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French Fierabras which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark; C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loyis Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil ececc. lxxxiij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this Lyf of Charles the Grete at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Jewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our natured and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

**Office of Jewelhouse**

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Thesaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, silver, pretious stones, and the markes of every thinge. Also he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaurer of England, And by oversight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like service, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Linucry, one perch de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court viij. ob. [leaf 49 back]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xli.: his Linucry is as Knightes, and if he be sicke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sicke, &c. Also in this office is a clark under him in the hall eatinge, taking for his Linucry at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yearely twentie shillings. And if he be sicke, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threcence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eightene shillings, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joyalx yearely &c. And if he be sicke, he taketh such Linucry as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating daily in the office, taking for his Linucry one loafe, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Linuries [leaf 50]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candels paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome setting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Chariott, and waiteth therupon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend upon this carriage. And this office hath also lodging in the Countrie towne for all these horses and servantes.
INTRODUCTION.

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to have into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest servant. The remenant goo to theire lodginge in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome have one servant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apporell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis theire, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of houssold to carrie the stuff of the Kingses in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of houssold, and this officer, be many interchanges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Accomp of houssold. And as for othir things touching this office, behold in the title De oblutionibus Regis capitulid before. all things of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinges, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kingses literey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London. The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows:

1 Vide de hoc antea: folio, 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]
2 The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period:—

J. P. R. 2110.]


This Account extending over five yeares and 8 days gives the sum received as nil.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellias extra regnum Anglie transeuntibus, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [i.e. in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellias hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lamute, coria, panni, aut mercinonia custumabilia non cockettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel urgentem in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focialia carecata seu posita fuerunt; vel si alique persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicabilia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibiciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quandiu Regi placerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predicte."
9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, \& also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100l from William Daubeney in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.\(^1\)

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given:

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of William Daubeney, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same: which office the said William Daubeney holds by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], ib. p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to William Daubeney (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, \&c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).


24 April. Grant to William Dawbene, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10l. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20l yearly value; further grant in survivorship to the

\(^1\) Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI. ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500
INTRODUCTION.

said William Dawbeney and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Altington during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardyne late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover... the which salt... was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, William Daubeny, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretended king... and also the summe of c. ti. parcell of xxiiij. ti by the said late pretended king borowed of the maire and aldermen of our said citie of London... and for suertie and contentacion of the said xxiiij. ti. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldermen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeny, then keper of juelx of the said pretended king on that othre partie ther made, more plainly doth appere."

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]... Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. William Dawbeney, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bishop for the said erle of Dissemond, a coler of gold of xxvi. oz, xxxvi. ti.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friers Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given]. John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

1 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.
2 Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)
Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the Rolls of Parliament, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeneys. In Blomfield’s Norfolk, Wm. Dawbney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of Roland and Vernagu and Sir Otuel, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of Rauf Coilzear from the unique printed copy.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

Sidney J. Herrtage.
The Lyf of the Noble and Cristen Prynce, Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

1 St. Aynt Poul, doctour of verjte, sayth to vs that al thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton to our doctrayne, And Boece maketh mention that the 4 helthe of every persone procedeth dyuercely. Thenne syth it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corroborated by the doctors of holy chyrche, Neuertheles the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembrance 8 engendre in vs correction of vnlauful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue to vs ensaumple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and 12 eschewyng the eyll. And also in recompute of hye hystoryes the comune vnderstandyng is better content to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For estymes 16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer, chanoone of lausanne, for to reduce for his playseyr somme hystoryes as wel in latyn & in romance as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght 20 puysaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Some of the grete Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland, Olyuer, and other, touchyng 2 somme werkes hautayne 24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the cristen fayth

Since, as St. Paul says, "all scriptures are written for our learning," and the lives of the ancients give us an example how to live,

1 sign. A ii. 2 col. 2.

CHARL. ROM. III.
to the best of my ability, chiefly

from the Speculun Historiale.

As I have before printed the Lives of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of Boulogne,

I now print this that all may be able to read it in our mother-tongue.

and to the confusion of the heathen sarazyns and myscreants, which is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater and the hystories dysioyned wythoute ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacyte of my lytel entendement, And after thystories and mater that I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.

And it myght soo haue ben that ye I had ben more largely enformed and al playn I had better made it. For I haue not sayd ony mater, but I haue theref ben enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour hystoryal, as by the canounes and somme other bookes whiche I make mencyon of the werk folowyng. And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable foundement I shaue toouch of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16 the frenssh men and for proufylete of euyer man, and after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20 grete aten[y]dacyon, by the playesyr of god, to whome I submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion of euyer persone.

Tenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in engrynte the book of the noble & vyctorous kyng Arthur, fyrst of the thre moste noble & worthy of crysten kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englishe the 28 noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyn kyng of Iherusalem, last of the said ij worthy, Somme persones of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten pynce Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce & emperor of Rome, the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystories, actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke as they be in latyn or in frensche. For the most

1 A ij. back.
2 Ed. fraunce.
quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frencsh here in this noble royame of england. And for to satsfyye the desyre & requeste of my good synguler lorde & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enprysed and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to our englysshe, as all alonc and playnely ye may rede, here, and see in thys book here folowyng, besechyng

And I ask all my readers to pardon any imperfections in the work, which I have done after my simple learning, for which I bless my fether and mother, who sent me to school.

And also to pardone me of the rude & symple reducyng: and though so be there be no gaye termes, ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be

vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue specially reduced it after the symple conynyng that god hath lente to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and

moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scyle, by whyche, by the suffraunc of god, I gete my lyuyng I hope truly. And that I may so do & contynue I bysoche hym to grante me of his grace, and so to laboure and

occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hyss blysse in heuen. AMEN.

Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin comprised.


Thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v chapters.

Of the kynges of fraunce paynyms vnto kyng Cloys of the first kings of France.

Of the kynges Cloys beynge a paynym haft to wyf of King Cloys, clothydis daughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruaylously: capitulo primo

How kyng Cloys beynge a paynym haft to wyf of King Cloys, clothydis daughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruaylously: capitulo ij

1 col. 2. 2 A iij.
How the kyng was admonested of the queene clotildis affectionately that he shold bylune in the cristen fayth & other maters: ca. 4

How kyng Cloys was vyctorious on his enemyes by cause he byluned in Ihesu Cryst: ca. iiij

How the kyng was baptysed by sauynt reymye, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an angel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of S fraunce ben enoyned at Raynes: capitulo. v.


Of King Pepyn. How Pepyn by hys prudence was chosen kyng of fraunce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession: capitulo primo

Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyous wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome: ca. ij

Of the corruption of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng: capitulo iiij 20

To whome the kyng Charles & his chyldren sones & doynters were deleyed: capitulo iiij

Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng and charytayble werkes, and other maters: ca. v 24

P. The thyrd partes of the fyrst book conteyneth iiij chapytres, & telleth how by denyue reuelacyon Charles deleynd the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and mysercauntaes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.

How the patryarcke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes: capitulo primo

How Charles with a grete companye went for to conquere the holy londe & other maters: ca. ij

Of the relyques whyche the emperour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon: [ca.] iiij
Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres easyewyng declared.

The first partye of the second book conteyneth 4 xvij chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene Olyuer and Fyerabras, a mernayllous gyaunt.

How in a place named Mormyonde Charles essyewed his varre ayenst the paynyms, after a lytel of 8 the prologue ca.

Of fyerabras how he came to exercyte charles: capitulo ij

How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour 12 what maner man was Fyerabras: capitulo iiij

The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly: ca.

How kyng charles & Rolland ben repryset by 16 thanctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor-sayd: capitulo v

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras notwythstondyng that he was hurt: [ca.] vj

How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he shold not fy^t with the gyaunt, but for al that he went forth: capitulo vij

How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no 24 thyng^ by hym, with other desputacions. viij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras to arme hym, and of the ix mernayllus swerdes, & how Olyuer named hym self by his propre name: [ca.] ix

How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters: capitulo x

How Olyuer made hys prayer 2to god whan he felte hym hurte: Capitulo xj

How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bane & dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was slayn: capitulo xij

How fyerabras & olyuer fowst togyder on fote mer-

1 A iiij, bk. 2 col. 2.
How Oliver overcame Fierabras, but was himself taken by the Saracens.

How Oliver was thrown into prison, and after released by Floripes.

Of the messengers sent by Charles and Balan.

Of the Bridge of Mantrible.

The second partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to speke to ballant thadmryral.

How Fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16 baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca.

How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant thadmryral and cruelly passyoned by pryson : capitulo ij

Of the pryson where the frenshe men were lodged 20 and how they were vsyted by fayr Floripes, 1 daughter of thadmryral, & of the beaute of hyr : capitulo 2 iij

How the frenshe men were had oute of pryson and vsyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24 chambre : capitulo iij

How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmryral vij peres of fraunce, whyche wold not gladly have goon thyder : capitulo v 28

How thadmryral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vj

Of the meruayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32 tribute that must be there payed for the passage, & how with fayr wordes the frenshe men passed over. [ca.] vij

How the barons cam & speake to thadmryral, and what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

1 A iii.
2 Ed. capitulo.
How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were saued & lodged to-gyder & knownen by her, & resonned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other
4 maters: capitulo ix

How lucifer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entered in to the chambr & after was slayne by due naymes in blowyng of the cole: capitulo x

8 How by the councelyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongly by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntlement a gyrdel was taken fro his daughter: capitulo xj

How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydes whiche suffred grete hungre, & how the goddes were by them confounded: ca. xij

How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, &
16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & reconuerted xx sommyers with vytylle: capitulo xij

How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral,

20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo xiiij

How the payynes had purposed to have hanged guy of burgoyn, seynge the crysten men, whyche socoured

24 hym payssantly. [ca.] xv

How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were puruyned of vytyl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fou3t with the payynys

28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl doun by enchauntment, & how the frenssh men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the payynys: capitulo xvij

32 Here begynmeth the thynd parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvij chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce made to them socours, and the payynes confused & destroyed.

Of the moeyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. fraunce.
and sheweth their affayres vnto kyng Charles, & how rychard of Normandy was ordeyned to for to goo to hym: capitulo primo

How after that Rychard was departed the kyng 4 claryon, the ryght puysaunt kyng, rode after hym, the whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valuyantly, & other maters: capitulo ij

How the hors of rychard cam & retorned through 8 thexcersyte of thadmyral & was seen & knowen of the peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had ben deede, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept: ca. iiij 12

How rychard of Normandy passed the ryner of flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte: capitulo iiij

How Charles was in purpoos for to have retorned wythoute goynge ony further, by the counceyl of the traytre gannelon & other his felowe: ca. v

How after the complaynte of Charles rychard of normandy came to hym, which recounted the grete 20 necessytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they were in: capitulo vij

How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Normandy with iiij other barons the stronge brydge of 24 mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what manere man was galafre: ca. vij

How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred into man TRYBLE after that Galafre was deede, not-with- 28 stondyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym, & many other maters, [ca.] viij

How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe dyd gretely hyr denoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32 hyr iiij sons were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral whom he knewe the tydynges: ca. ix

How the peres of fraunce were assayed more
strongly than ever they were, and how the tour was
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters:
4 capitulo
How the frenssh men in the tour had tydynges of
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-
lon bare hym mernoayllously whan he was sent forth
8 alone & what he dyd: [ca.]
How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,
12 & other maters: ca.
How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyang
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how afterward thadmyral dyd mernoaylles and grete ennoye to the
16 frenssh men: capitulo xij
How the peres of fraunce that were in the tour cam
oute whan they saw thoost of Charles, & how thad-
myral was taken and holden prysoner: ca. xiiiij
20 How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that
was made to hym he wolde not be baptysed but was
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &
24 she queene of that contre: capitulo xv
How Floripes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book: ca. xvj
28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth
ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiiij
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two
32 grete geantes.
How saynt James appyered to Charles, & how by
the moyen & by the condnyte of the sterres he went in
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued: ca. prima

1 A v.
Of cytees goten in spayne by Charles, & how somme of theym were by hym cursed: capitulo iiij
Of a grete ydole whyche was in a cyte that myght not be beten doun, and of the sygnes & condycyons thereof: capitulo iiij
Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galice, & of other chyrches that he dyd therof : [ca.] iiiij
How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8 spayne & destroyd & put to deth the cyristen men Charles recoered it, & other maters : capitulo v
1 How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12 how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, & other maters : capitulo vij
How Charles accompanied with moche peple retorned to the place forsaid & took the cite of agene, & other 16 maters : capitulo viij
Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan he was retorned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in his companye, and of theyr puysance : capitulo viij 20
Of the tryewe of charles & of aygolant & of the deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not baptysed : ca. ix 9 Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple, & how moche people of the cyristen men were dede by 24 conceupyscence of money, & the cyristen founden dede by myracle : ca. x 9 Of ferragus the meruayllous geaunt, how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out daunger, & how afterward rolland fouȝt ayenst hym : 28 ca. xj
How on the morne rolland & ferragus foughten to-gyder, and of their despytyng of their fayth, and by what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland : ca. xij 32
How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of that place & of cibyllc abode hym, & of their distructyon : ca. xij 1 col. 2.
How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chirches 1 of spayne subgettes to the same, & of ye pryncypal chyrches: [ca.] xiiij

"The second partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganelon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce.

8 How the trayson was comprysed by Ganelon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganelon is reproued by thauctour: ca. j

Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland 12 was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and deed: capitulo ij

How Rolland dedyed moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and prayed to god moche devoutely, 16 and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal: capitulo iij

Of the vysion of the deth of rolland shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & 20 how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iij

How olyuer was founden slayn, and of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganelon whyche was lydous: capitulo v

24 How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankysynges and preysynges to god and to saynt Denys: And of the constitucions that he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

28 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed holyly, 2 and of his deth shewed to tharchebysshop Turpyn, and of his buryeng Imperyally: ca. vij

Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and of hys deth at acon, & of his sepulture: capitulo viij

Thexcusacyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix

Thennoye of thauctour: ca. v

Explicit A V, bk.

1 A v, bk. 2 col. 2.
Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francis, a
companion of
Eneas,
and of the kings
of France after
him.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynyms vnto kyng' cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo primo]

S it is redde in thystoryes of the troians 4
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of
Troye there was a kyng moche noble named francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of francus & began to regne in grete prosperitye: & for
the felcyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfye a
cyte whiche he named fraunce, & so folowyng all the
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhauzed & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The
second was marcurius xxxij yere; The iiij pharamundus
regned xij yere; The iiij clodyus xijij yere; The v 16
Meronens x yere; The vij hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng' whyche
regned vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kyng of
burgoyne: capitulo

I N that tyme was kyng' of the burgoy nons guy-
dengus, the whiche had' iiij sones al of good
aege, that is to wete, Agabondus, the iiij 2 godo-
gesylus, the iiij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after

1 A vj. 2 col. 2.
henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned hyr. This hysericus had two fayre doughters, theldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncle 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssymyled. The yonger of these ij doughters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng thys the kyng clodoneus, or 8 Cloys in frenshe, beyng a paynjin whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, ofstymes for hys aflayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyllys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaute & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfied it to the kyng cloys, and when thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde, 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curjous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng those dayes the kyng Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssymyled, & left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoifye was accomplysshed this mayde Clotildis, 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssymyled, & left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoifye was accomplysshed this mayde Clotildis, 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad & wet contente kyssed hyr honde, when this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed hyr honde & sent for to sene hym by hyr seruaunt. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche 32 He presents hym-self before her to receive alms. 

1 A vj, back.
Joyously and bare in his honde the ryng of kyng cloys & humbly behawed hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymplicityest thou thyself lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trueth the that I am a messager of the noble kyng cloys kyng of Fraunce, whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng enformed of your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8 for to be quene," & forthwith he presented to hir the ryng of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to the tresour of agabondus hir vnclle, & sayd to the messenger that he shold recomaunde hir to the kyng in tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she prayed hym that of al this he shold say noo worde, & that she wold not doo but as the kyng wold. & vpon 16 this poynct aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng, whereupon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng sent ageyn his messager aurelianus to agabondus vnclle of Clotildis for to haue hir to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe this poynct aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng, whereupon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng sent ageyn his messager aurelianus to agabondus vnclle of Clotildis for to haue hir to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20 thenteneyon of kyng cloys he ansered to the messenger: "Say hardily to the kyng thy lord that he hath lyte to do in desyryng to haue my nyce to wyf:" but the bourgoynons wyse couseyllours, redoubtyng the payne 24 saunce of kyng Cloys, by good couseyl when they had wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng & founde the ryng of kyng cloys which clotylidis had layed therin, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28 wente & concluded to performe the wylle of kyng cloys: & vpon this agabondus ful of yre delynerd Clotildis to aurelianus & he brought hir with his peple with grete Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete 2 playsyr to see 32 thys fayr mayde. And forthwth with al solemnitye after the maner royal he espoused hir after the custome of his lawe.

1 col. 2.  
2 A vij.
How Clotildis tried to convert Cloys to Christianity.

How kynge Cloys was admonested by the queene clotildis affectuouse that he shold byleue in the crysten fayth, and other matters: capitulo iij

The fyrst nyght after the espousayles atte houre that the kynge and the queene shold slepe togyder, Clotyldis embraced wyth the loue of god by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord. by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord, went and said to the kynge: "My right dere lord, I requyre the that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde before or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The kynge sayde: "demaunde what thou wylt For I am wel contente." Clotyldys theenne sayde to hym: "First, I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whych made heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in Ihesu Cryst his gloryous sone, kyng of alle kynges, which by his passyon hath re redeemèl the. And in the holy ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good werkes, procedyng fro the fader & fro the sone, the foresayde Trynyte in one onely essen[ce], to whome ought to be gyuen al honour and all lawde & byleue. Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and lene the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folyssh stryng and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrches whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the that thou wylt demaunde my parte and porcyon of the goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondius myn vnclle whom he dyd put to deth falsely and wythoute occasyion, but the vengeance I lene to god." when she had said this the kynge answered: "Thou hast demaunded me a poynte & passage which is to me over stryat & hard to graunte, that is that I shold forsake my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one
Cloys demands his Queen's Dowry from Agabondus.

Cloys begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request.

Cloys sends Aureliani to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Cloildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

only god of whom he thou hast spoken to me, demandde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Cloildis a[nswered]: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye & byseche the that thou wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whom oney is due al honour." the kyng made none other answer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the queene Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had done his message Agabondus, replenyshe[d] with grete Ire, a[nswered] to the messager that he shold as soon the kyng as any thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comunudeth the by me that thou make an answer upon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyce of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyth all the freynesshe peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that were is, wythout mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayne[d] to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24 people, sente a grete partye of his tressour to Aurelyen the messager of kyng Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysityng his royame The queene clotylidis was anon grete with chylde, and some after was delyned 28 of a sone whom she dyd do baptysi[e], And contynuelly requyre[d] the kyng that he wold bylue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do therafter. And whan the chylde was baptysed anone it expyred 32 & dyd, whereof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the queene: 24" ye thou haddest gyuen hym and dedeyd hym to my goddes he were now alayne." The

1 A vij. back. 2 col. rj.
OF THE VICTORIES OF CLOIS AFTER HIS CONVERSION.

quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng perturbed in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After, the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named lodomyrus, the whyche when he was baptysed bycame anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye. And whan the kyng sawe it languysshe he beyng euyl contente said to the quene: "and now,"1 sayd he, "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god devoutely for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was guarysshed and hool.

How the kyng Cloys was vyctorious of his enemies by cause he bylucyd in Ihesu Cryste: Capitulo iiiij

K Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so persenueryng the allies the Allemayns had vyctorye on the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were over thrown & slayn. There whan aurelyen sawe the dystructyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see tofore your eyen the mortal destructyon of your peple,

A second son also falls ill after baptism,

but through the queen's prayers recovers.

20 Clois attacks the Germans,

but is defeated with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls on the king to be converted,

28 I requyre you that ye byluc ye in god almyghty whych hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady the queene adoureth, precheth, and byluceth on." When the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

1 Ed. how.

2 A viij.
Clois, being converted to Christianity, subdues the Germans.

sayd: “O these cryst, some of the veray god almyghty, on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert precheth & notyfyzeth hym to gyue remedye to them that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and socour that I may be vctorious of myn enmyes by experyence presently. I byleue\(^1\) on the, and in thy name I shalle baptyse me. I have demaunded my goddes for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo conforte when they may not helpe them that requyre them. Wherfore to the as veray god and lord I requyre the that I may be delyuerd by thy lyfe puyssaunce fro 12 myn aduer^2^saryes.” he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe voys The allemayns his enmyes vanquysshe\(^3\) & murdred\(^4\) began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng was deed, wherfore they that abode yielded them to 16 kyng cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that contreye vnder hys obayssaunce & puyssaunce payeng yerely trybutt. Thenne after this vctory by the puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20 recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Innocacion dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned vctorye.

\[\text{How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle was brought the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wherof ever after all the kynges of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse-}

\[\text{eracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.}

\[\text{A Ffter that the quene had herde the kynghe whyche was connerted vnto the crysten fayth for the vctorye whych he had obteyned she had grete loye And Incontyne}^2\text{ent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop}\]

\(^1\) Ed. byleuene. \(^2\) col. ij.
of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for to preche to the kyng: his saluaçon & the manere of the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that he had wel environed the kyng, began strongly to excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst, And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowýng the error of thydolles they began al to byleue in god & say: "Syr kyng: gloryous, it is best that ye forsake thydolles and adoure the god Inmortal whome the quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be contente." Incontiennent al this was shewed to saynt Remyge, wherof he was moche joyous, and cam to them dylygently as a good herdman that taketh grete payne to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playesyr ought he to have to come thyster, For his comýng and hys prechyng dyd soo grete proufyllyte that it made the peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy baptysme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to henen. wherfore the necessyte of the saluacion of thys kyng enlumyned of grace, dysposed to byleue, conioyned to good entencyon maad affectuously saynt Remyge to come, for he thought wel when the kyng was baptysed and byleued in Ihesu cryst and his commandements that al the peple subgette to hym shold do the same wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had commyned with the kyng touchyng his saluaçon he began to ordeyne the place for to baptysse hym honourably, and dyd do paynte the hystoryes after somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and repayred the places ryght delycyously. And on that other he dyd do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly, & compose baptyzatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan al this was done saynt kyng was al redy to receyue the

1 A viij, back.  2 col. 2.  3 Ed. to.

The bishop comes, and by his preaching converts the whole French nation, who urge the king to forsake idolaty.
CLOIS AND ALL HIS PEOPLE ARE BAPTISED BY ST. REMIGIUS.

He delivers an exhortation to the king.

Remigius declares the articles of the Christian faith.

Clois and all his subjects are baptised.

A dove brings from heaven a vessel containing chrism.

Holy sacrament of baptisme, to whome the frende of god saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere. ¶ "Syr kyng, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure entenvy to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore this tyme ye haue gynen fayth,* whych ben ful of al vanyte and do no thynge but excersite of damnacon. And ye ought to byleue wyth ryȝt humble hert in one onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8 ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whych hath created heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouȝt to gyue fayth and creunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone, whych for the sauacyon of humayn creature wolcJ 12 take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued in the holy of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy ghoost: whych after was sette on the crosse and toke deth dolorously for to redeyne vs, was buryed and roos fro deth to lyf, and after ascended in to heuen, and sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyng and dece." 20 ¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque moder, & her ordonnayre." and whan saynt Remyge had ynough enformed the kyng and the peple of our fayth and byleue he baptysed them in the name of the fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan he came to enoyntyng after the custome of the holy cresme whych noe man brought, Incontynent by the plesyr of god and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle stondyng 2 sodeynlye came doun descendyng fro heuen a douue shyning, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy cresme was, wherwyt the kyng cloys was fyrst 32

[]printed taptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr manere: "Syr Kyng, it is tyme that ye ought of pure Intencion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme ye haue blyuen on." 1 BJ. 2 Ed. stondyng.
OF THE DEATH OF CLOIS, AND THE RISE OF PEPIN.

entoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresme that is therin the kynges of fraunce \(1\) onelye been enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. \(2\) In that tyme were baptyseu\(3\) the systers of the sayd kyng\(4\) and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete loye and exaltacion of glorye.

\(5\) The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone.

\(6\) How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j

T

He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyngi I

Cloys the fyrst crysten kyng of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, whych was the kyng\(1\) Pepyn of another lygnage. And the kyng which was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which \(2\) kyng\(3\) deouute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyre thoffyce royal of a kynges put hym self in relygyon for to lede a solytarye lyf. \(4\) In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prync. And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeed\(1\) of thys sayd\(2\) Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn

\(5\) to the pynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, “whether is he more worthy to be a

1 col. iij. 2 B j. back.
kyng or to be said a kyng whiche for[r] pes and parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thynge and is abandomned and gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the 4 name onely of kyng?" When the pope had herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and veray equyte ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & S contynueth it. For whyche anser & demaunde the Frenshe men by counceyl1 2 approuued considered theyr kyng hyldrycus professed in a monasterye in lyf soltyarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12 yng ought not to be ony thynge ayenst them that lyuen soltaryly,) how wel a kyng ought not to be soltarye, For suche as is the Kyng suche is the Royame.  ¶ For salamon sayth, yf the kyng be neclyge the peple 16 wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frenshe men beyng wel eNformed of the condycions apperteynyng to a kyngge after an auctour that sayth thus: ¶ "The Prynce 20 when he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and ought not to take but seruauntes propyre and necessarye wythoute superfluuyte, and not to nouryshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes unprouffyt-able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold eschewe multyplecayon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold not corrupte hys subgettes by euyl exaumple. He shold not breke hys esponsaylles, he shold gladly rede in bookes & shold have by hym peple wel letterd, And shold Inge wythoute faunour. ¶ And tofore al thynges 4he 32 shold adoure & serne god: he shold not gladly take yeftes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys oflycers."

1 Ed. cunceyl.  2 col. 2.  3 Ed. propyee.  4 ij.
Alle thy thyng wel seen emonge them for the consueracion of the people emonge the myscreeantes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be kyng of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned nomore vpon the frensshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boneface, And by thanctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles the grete was conformed and approuned and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedyction to sucede fro lygnage to lygnage moost neste. And the sai12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were opoosaunts and aycnst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrcches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attributed by good ryght to hym by vctorye obteyned, and was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce. 16 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had goten on the noble quene berte, doughter of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had divergence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng Charles was chosen and maad Empour of Rome. And the sayd kyng Peypyn regned xviiij yere in prosperyte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder 20 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the royame ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouernement hooly of the royame of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-aftre shalte be more playnly shewed.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had’ maad’ many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

1 Ed. repeats and charles. 2 col. 2.
Charlemagne visits Rome.

His noble Charlemagn, otherwyse calleth Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puysaunce, and opperacions virtuous by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was one ly onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope adryan regned dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annullyng the heresyes and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the servyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyctorye of them in dyuers maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles was a stronge pylere of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And when he came to paune there he taryed & sette hys syege and soioured a lytel tyme, And after wyth a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyte many places deuoutelye. And after when he returned he took paune, And when he had all doon his playsyr he returned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnuersal chyrche. And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bissshoppes & archebisshops in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he shal conferme and the rebellys that shall gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

1 Ed. he was. 2 P. ij, back. 3 Ed. dyners. 4 col. 2.
noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of fraunce, whyche al ha I promysed fydelelye one to that other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth. In that tyme many mortal warres duryn; the lyf of kynge Pepyn & of charles and after that the royame of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerye of the mys-creauntes, And maad pese not wythoute grete trauayll for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of the daunygerous contrey. whan alle thys was termyned all ytalye vnder the trybute of the royame of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to gyue thankynges and laude to god moche deuoutelye for vyctorye that he had and for execusyon doon vpon the enemies of the fayth. And there with the pope Adryan he maad many constytucyons whyche by ryst equyte ought wel to be obserued. And after he beyng thus in Rome vyctoryous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned & consecrate kyng of the ytalyens, And hys sone lowys was ordeyned and consecrate kyng vpon guyan. thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete ancyunte were of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them put to deth Constantyn his sone wold hane regned for themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the senatours and other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this poynte, after that they had taken delyberacyon of grete counseyl, seeyng the grete valure and noblesse of kynge Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse hardynes, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche herafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange & exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde of Pope Leo he was crowned emperour with alle honoures that myght be comprysed. And al wyth one.
voys gat to hym launde and honour, And called hym Cezar & August by a symlytydute of vulture in contemplacyon of grete playsyr that they had mad hym kyng of ytalyens.

1 Of the corpulence of kynge Charles, and of the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iiij

Charles was more than 8 feet high, stout, broad-shouldered, and large of limb, with a bred a foot long.

His face was long and fair: his eyes bright and sparkling.

According to Turpin

1 Harlemyn Kynge of Fraunce after that he was Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8 regned emperour thyrtene yere, And had them regned vpon the frenshe men xxxij yere. And in the cont[ry]ye of Rome he edyfeyed many cytees and restored good townes & many other thynges whyche may not well be recounted by cause of his meruayllous werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth theexcercyte of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of 16 Eaynes which lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys syght and regards fyers & malyeuous.

The lengthe of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure of his feet, which were meruayllously long; fatte, and massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute hauynge the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The armes and thyes he had ample and large: he was a subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and of alle hys members he was of ryght grete strengthe, he had the face dednyte in lengthe and hys berde was a foot longe: he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes: A fayr regarde and countenance had thys man: he had the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a lyon sparklyng lyko a cole by furyous regarde, his wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng

1 col. 2.  
2 B iiij, back.
his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrd was viij fote longe wyth-oute that that henge down fro the bokle to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was 4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes, or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok, or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrey 8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strength the is not a lytel thynge to speke of. For he wold smyte a knyght armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from the coppe of the hede down to the sadel. And 'f he 12 hadd bytwene hys handes iiiij hors shoen wyth oute ouermochre prouyng hys myght he wold ryzt them oute and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym 16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he hadd in hym thre thynge moche honourable: Fyrst, in yeftes ye-uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Ty tus themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal 20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche he promysed. And whan it was demaundedy why he promysedy thynge that he myght not gyue, forthwyth he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce 24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme thynge. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte just and mercifull, 28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And, thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduyseyd: whan he spake he thought strongly on that he sayd & whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for 32 to comprysy thentencyon of the spekar.

His waist was 8 feet round.

At his dinner he could eat a quarter of moton, or a goose, or a peacock, or a hare.

His strength was wonderful.

He could lift an armed knight with one hand.

He was liberal to all.

Just and mercifull, and careful in his language.
To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and hys daughtres were Instructe and' taughte
to doo: capitulō iiiij

Charles had his sons taught religion, science,

Jousting,
the art of war,
and hunting.

His daughtres were taught to
spin and sew,
and other suitable
accomplishments.

Charles was never idle, but fond of study.

He built at Acon a splendid church to our Lady.

How Charles brought up his children.

Ame bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete seyence in grete prosperitye of lyf and in honour waxed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle. 

Of whom first Charles took gladly payne for to studye, And in the tyme of Infancye he maade seyence to be taughte to hys sones and daughtres, and after whan they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the seuen artes lyberal. And when the sones were of age 12 for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fransce he made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse the warre whan it shold be nede, and when they dyd not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16 and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to chynalry contyuumly. After this he made his daughtres to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20 slouthe & faute of occupacyon they shold not have occasyone to falle in thought dysordynate for to haue Inclynacyon to synne and vyce, and whan he was not occupye in maters of charge and weyghty he wolde 24 employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thynges to thende that he wolde not be ydle, accordyng to the pystle of saynt poude, whiche admonesteth vs to do alwaye somme good, by cause pat our enemye the fende 28 holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencyon dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in Acon in Almayn a chyrche of our lady comprysed of meruayllous beaute & moche rychele ordeyned, and wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a parlyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

1 B iiiij. 2 col. 2.
OF THE HABITS AND MANNER OF LIFE OF CHARLES.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meu other to doo to the lorp lyke as hym self and in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys
contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by puyssaunce in the royame of fraunce.

Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-
ters: capitulo

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other seyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
continued in them: And by ardaunt desyre
frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vysyted on mornynges and on euennes & in
the nyght ofymes. and at good festes he sayld not
to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrifyses & oblacions:
And also gaf largely almesse for the lone of god, and
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely the poure folke of
his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &
syluer and vytyll after the necessyte of the place: as
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other
contreyes: as he that sayd: "gold and syluer is not
myn." To every man he desyred amytye and pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparsaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the
heeres in grete reverence, & the vysage loyous. he had
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he eate
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
above alle other fleshe he louned and vse at his souper.
Alwaye he louned redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede
the soule whiche is perpetuel of spyrituel fode, for to

1 B iiiij, back.
mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward God his maker, as of refecyon of the body for to conserue the lyf. And emonge al other bookes he delyted strongly in the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte, For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt & drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked? in his bedde two or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his slepe foure or v tymes and wallced in hys chambre. Thus Charles perseuerd in felicyte ryal and emperyal, He sent seiite oueral thorugh hys empyre hys messagers and commissioners to study and report grete couiicej'llours for to vysyte hys proujmces and kingdums, and good townes, for to be euformcd of the gouernours of them for to do to eneriche Instyce and reson; and made many constytucys & lawes accordyng to the 16 places, and commanded them to be obserued and kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles sente thorugh al the world for to knowe ouer al the gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- mayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were halowed and made of them bookees for tabyde in eternal memorye. & euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre hundred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor he excersycyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued & dere reputed of every body. In that tyme Aaron the kyng of perce for the magnyfyceine of charles sente to hym an Olyphaunt merceyllously grete for a synguler yefte and many other thynges precyouses. Thys 32 Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in suche renommee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. presernd. 3 Ed. counceyllours.

Aaron, king of Persia, sends him as a present an elephant.
The Patriarch of Jerusalem applies to Charles for help.

Aaron the king of Persia sent to him amongst other vestes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and of saynt speratus and the hea{d} of saynt Panthaleon marters in 4 to Fraunce.

The thyr{d} parte of the fyrst book conteyn-{e}th thre chapytres, and' speketh how by reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the holy londe fro the honde of the paynyms.

How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to Charles for socour after that he was de{jecte and' caste oute of the Turkes: capit-}

tulo primo.

It is rede that in the tyme that charles was em-

peror of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo

oppres{syed} of the paynyms by mortall warre that 16 vmmeth he myght saue hym self. And thus when he knewe nomore what to do He ha{d} in remembran{ce} the noble charles and' he beyng{e} enformed{d} of hys holynes, for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-

cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and' defendour of holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-

stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and' to hys sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste and' another whyche named{d} hym self Davyd archeprest, whom{e} themperour Constantyn sent incontyuent to charles, And wyth them twyne he ordeyn{ed} for to goo wyth them two other whyche were named{d} ysaac and' Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd{e} Con-

stantyn had{e} wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:

"On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that 1 col. 2.
he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens, and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng1 ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and1 sayd1 to me with swete wordes: 'Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doyng of the paynyms whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed1 god for to haue helpe. Io! what thou shialte doo. Pourchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng of the gaily ens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and' defendour of holy 8 chyrche.' And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had1 1hys sheldes rede, gyrde Awyth hys swerde, & ha(J hys sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And1 12 the heed of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre: & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynyng2 and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body: 16 he had' eyen shyiiyng as ij sterces, and' hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton : 'O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Crist, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynges: be enclosed in Justyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed in honour. Ihesu Criste gyue the grace to perseuere,2 and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo formerly.'" And as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had' delected the paynyms oute of Iherusalem seven tymes, wherfore whan he my3t nomore he sente his messagers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan 28 the messagers had' presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche gremously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynyms. After this he sente for tharchebysshop Turpyn and maad3 hym to preche 3openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

1 B v, back. 2 Ed. presuere. 3 col. 2.
CHARLES WITH A GREAT ARMY STARTS FOR THE HOLY LAND. 33

the whiche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle generally were enclyned to goo thyder

How Charles with a grete companye wente for to conquere the holy lande, and many other maters: capitulo iij

After that thys whiche I haue tofore sayd was publysshe. The kyng dyd do make an edict and dyd do crye it thorugh out al the contreye, that every man that myght here armes shold be redy for to goo wyth hym aynst the paynyms, and he that wold not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was never seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple assembled as themne were founden. And whan they were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete fayth in grete hope to obtayne vctorye vnder the conduyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in to a grete wode of buscage in whiche they myght not passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete Payne, and Charles thought to passe it in one daye: wherfore he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was ful of dyuers wyld beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons, Tygres, and other beestes. Whan they were thus in that grete wode and the nyght came on they were al abasshed & troubled wythout knowying whych waye they shold holde. And Charles commanded that they shold loke yt they myght see or knowe ony habytacyon, but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryghtwayne, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the psautier, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

CHARL. ROM. III.
say the vers folowyng "Dedue me domine in semita mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys: 4 "kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that were presente were moche troubled, and notwythstondyng al thys the kyng contynued to say the psaulter vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8 whistle he sayd the byrde began more strongly to crye and say ¶ "O freynshe man, what sayest thou? 1 O freynshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the Kyng & hys companye wente and followed the byrde 12 whyche conduyte them vnto the ryght waye whyche they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes so doyng. But whan charles & hys grete pyssaunce 16 were nyghe theyr enemys they were moche troubled of theyr comyng & the crysten lorde were gretyly reioysed of theyr comyng. For wythoute cessyng he rested not tyll that he had recouerd the contreye of 20 crysten men and expelled alle the paynymys whyche moche redounded to hym grete honour & victорye. And in retournyng he demaunded of themperour of Constantinoble lyence to departe & of the other patry- 24 arkes & archepreestes. And themperour helde hym an hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd themperour for thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates of the cyte dyd dye many bestes of dyuers maners 28 & dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it for somme reward for the grete good that he hadde doen the day in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32 he took councyll of hys people what he ought to 2 doo in takynge of the precyous & ryche yeftes or to retouerne in to freunce wythout takynge of ony thyng, And there

1 col. 2. 2 B vj, back.
vpon his barons counseilled hym that he shold take no thynge for hys labour, For he had doon no thynge but for the loue of god onely: And he beyng wel content 4 of thys answer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete payne shold take noo thynge of the Jewellys aforesayd.

Of the relyques that themperour charles brought fro constantynoble and' fro the holy londe, and of the myracles that were doon: capitulo

W

Han themperour of constantynople and the patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles wold take no thynge of the good aforesayd, he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them, & when he was thus constrayned he bysought them that for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon. When thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast every man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych shold treate & see the reliques. When it came to the thyrd day the noble Charles by grete contryceyon confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After that moche reuerently they beganne to syuge the letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psaulter. And there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute of the same so grete an odour that all they that were presente thought to be in paradys. Thenne charles ful of hool and very creance of fayth kneled down to the grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche strongly prayed our lord that for the glorye of hys

but Charles refuses to accept any of them.

He asks, instead, for some relics of Our Lord.

The Emperor gives him the sacred crown of thorns.
name presently wold renewe the myracles of hys holy passyon and glorious resurrexyon. 1 & assone as he had prayed in a moment the crowne began to floorysshhe, & a meruayllous sweete odour yssued out of the floures, 4 soo rynt delcyous that eche man supposed that hys vestementes & clothynge had comen oute of heuen. 5 Thence after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kuttyng wel puryfied to cutte the said crowne and in cuttyng 8 alwaye more & more the sayd crowne flourysshed and the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the 2floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and wept 12 so habundantlye that whan he wende to hame gyuen to tharchebyschop Ebroin the floures he wythdrew he hondre & supposed that the sayd Ebroin 3 had holde them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16 myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete houre. And after whan he had gyuen in kepyng the sayd thornes to the sayd Ebroin he sawe the coffret in thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20 them self, whiche sone after were conynted in to manna and in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce. And it hath be the oppynyony of many that thys was of the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24 Thence were there shewed myracles For al seek people that were there present were heled of al theyr maladyes by the odour of the floures aforesayd, and the peple that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse 28 of peple cryed verytably that day was a day of helthe & resurrection, for by the sanour of the mellyfluous floures alle the cytee was puryfied and replenysshed of grace: for thre hundred 1 & one seek man by compt 32 were heled 1 & guarishshed of their maladyes. 4Emonge al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre monethes, whyche was blynde, deef, & dombe, but at

1 Ed. resurrexyon. 2 B vij. 3 Ed. Ebron. 4 col. 2.
moment 1 when the thorne was drawn fro the crowne
he took hys syght, and when it was layed in ageyn he
recommet his heeryng; And in florysshynge of it he
was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
danyel took a mayl of which the precyous body of our
lord in his passyonym hath be perceved and in grete reuerence
was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of
it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was
drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said
that he byeng in an extasye was heled and guaryshed
d2 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to
the kyng* Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy
sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady & the
clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme
16 of saynt Symeon; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes
& caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in
passyng, by a castel there was a chylde newe dede
deth whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And when
he came to Acon in Almayne, 2 whyche is a moche fayr
cyte where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche
fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of
24 our lady, wherin hym self is buried. There atte laste
were guarysshed & heled blynde men and seek men of
the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij
lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokedbacked,
28 lij of the fallyng sekenes, lxv of the cowte, many of
them of the same place & many of other maladyes.
And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iuyl at
Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the
32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro
Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was
establysshed that one day of the weke of the fastyng 3 of
ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iuyl shold be made

1 Ed. meuyng.  2 B vij. back.
this demonstration and notifyfycacyon. And in thys confytution was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Aechyllens bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneh thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'.

The fy rst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllyons gaeante.

How in a place which was called' mornyonde charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

The fy rst chapytre.

I have spoken tofore in the fy rst book superfycyally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendynge after my purpoos vnto Kyng charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaiu/ce of hym and of 20 lys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behauyng I shal make mencion after that I shal move conceyue by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute of an audentyke book named "myrrour hystoryal" and in auncyent cronycles, And haue onelye translated thhem oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a Romance maad' of thanneuent faeyon wythoute grete onlynamme in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned, which book after somme 2 and moost comunely is called " Fyerabras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllyons a gaeante as I shal make mencyon whyche was van-
quayshed by Olyuer, And? at the laste baptyseed? & was after a saynt in heuen. And? in effect it spaketh of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssance of the admyrall whyche was fader of fryerabras. wherefo in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely to reduce thaunceynt ryme in to prose & to denyde the and have only reduced the ancient rime into prose, without adding anything.

8 mater by chaptynes in the best ordynaunce that I shal conne, wyhthoute any thygne that I have not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncpalc of thempourour Charles whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of the xcerxyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyryr persones, & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of myllo myllon erle and of dame berthe propre syster of kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at the xcersyte 24 of kyngs charles : After hym Rychard of Normandye, Richard, Garin, Geoffrey, Howel, Ogier, Lambert, Naymes, Thierry, Basin, Guy de bourgoynes, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Cambell whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iiij book at rounacyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoynes: Also there 32 was Ryoil du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and many other that were subgettes to Charles. And? not-wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named? were alwaye redy for to col. 2.
DOO his commanndement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuely.

Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcersyte of Charles: capitulo

He admiral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete & payssant of body and of peple, had a sone named Fyerabras the moost mernaylous geaunt that euer was borne of moder, for of the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, & of coulloygue, & more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst: & by hys grete payssanct entered on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare awaye the holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recouerte how they were recouerd. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrj-e, whyche after that many warres & bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the paynyns and thexcersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym; & came vnto the lyces of Kyngge Charles moche furyous and eschaufled as he shold fyght al armed and wel founysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of themperour charles whyche were of the aylge slynynge, And he sware by Mahommet his god & by his myst that he wold neuer departe till he had foughten & made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

1 B viij. back. 2 col. 2.
that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye voys: "O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse, sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoyes; & swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued of me. and yf thou make to me refuse of thys that I of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be ny:t thou shal of me be assayled & dyseomfyted & I shal Smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllung; and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer unhappie, meschaunt, & caytyfs. For outragiously & folyly as ey:1 and olde thou hast enpryset to come in to thys contreye wherifro thou shalt haue cause hastely to deparde." These wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto the shadowe of a tre and laye there & dysarmed hym of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his hors vnto a tree, and whan he was thus at his ease he 41 began to crye with an hye voys: "O charlemayn, kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue thys day so ofte callyed? wythoute more lenger delaye sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or ogyer the danoyes whom I haue herde preyset. And yf perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardily late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunte-est and that they be courageus hardy and wel armed, And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to 32 retorne tyl they be confusd and destroyed by me. for be ye sure that it shal nener be to me reproche that I be fugytyf for ony frensse man lyuyng! I hane here tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten He challenges Roland or Oliver, (96) or any six or seven French knights. (102) He takes off his arms and lies down under a tree, (99) and reveates his challenge with threats. He declares he has already slayn ten kings in single combat. (108)

C j.
kynge of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard of Normandy sayd' to Charles what maner man Fyerabras was: 4 ca.

Assone as fyerabras had fynyshed hys wordes the Emperour Charles whyche wel had herde hym menayllle moche of hys langage, And demaunded Rychard of Normandy what was that Turke that so had cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys persone. For kyng Charles sayd: "I haue wel herkened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12 ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte."

To whome Rychard Duke of normandy anserd: "Syr kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche one of the strengest borne of moder: And he is a sarasyne of so 16 grete fyerste that he ne preyseth kyng ne erle ne none other persone of the world."

¶ Whan Charles understoold hym he began to clawe his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20 he shold not ete ne nener drynke tyl one of the pyeres of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaundedy of Rychard of Normandy how thys Paynym was named. ¶ Rychard ansered: "syr Emperour, this paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to redoubte and hath done moche harme to2 crysten men. He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and nonnes, and hath defliede chyrcles. ¶ And he hath 28 robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and many other reliques 3 for whome ye take grete payne. And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And the holy sepulcre wherin god was buryed." Wherupon 32 Charles ansered: "of thyse that thou hast sayd to me I

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. or. 3 C j. back.
am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn I shalle neuer have Ioye tyll that my desyre be accomplisysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that fayt al the freynshe men were commome and troubled And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of courage for to goo and fyght agent thys geaunt Fryera-

8 bras He sayd to Roland: "My dere neucwe, I praye that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that thou doo there thy denoyr."

\[ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiiij W

\[ Han themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
toysly vnto his neucwe Roland, Folyly & wyth- oute reason Roland answerd hym thus: "Fayr 16 vncl, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye were confused and dysmembred than I shold take ar-\textsuperscript{1}mes or hors for to Inste lyke as ye say. For on the last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynyms, 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal strokes, of whych oluyer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & when we repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at enu, whan ye were wel dronen ye maad\textsuperscript{a} auaunte openlye that the olde and auncyent knyghtes whyche 28 ye had brouȝt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. \[ And every man knoweth wel how I was that eueryng assembled and 32 wery of trauaylle that I took in that day. \[ And by my faders soule that was cuyl\textsuperscript{a} said\ of you. \[ And now it shal be knowen how the olde & auncyent knyghtes shal

\[ and that he will never rest till some one does so, (129)

\[ Charles asks Roland to accept the challenge, (143)

\[ but Roland refuses, (145)

\[ reminding Charles that he had sneered at him and his companions the previous night, (148)
bene them, for by god whyche oughte to haue al in his subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that enuer shal be in my fawour and lone ye he take vpon hym to Iust[e] ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland had spoken that worde Themperour hys uncle hauynge moche Indiganneion therat smote hym thwarte the vysage wyth hys ryght gauntelet that hys nose breste a blood habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a grete furye sette honde on hys sweerde whan he sawe hys blood, and had smetyn hys uncle yf he had not be lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles sawe thentencyon of Eoulland he was meruayllously abasahed & sayd: "god of heuen, who wold haue thought that I shold haue had yon el of Eoulland my newe whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst our aduersaryes! And he cometh rennying agenst me wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my blood and lignage that here is present, And that more sonner shold socoure me than any other! Now I beseche God that on the crosse suffred passyonthat this 20 day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said in a grete furour he comanded the frensshe men & sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shal never ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the frensshe men understood the commaundement of Charles for to haue accompliyyshed it that one lokep vpon that other for to see who wold sette first honde vpon hym. And whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel a-parte wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng with an hyghe voys and sayeng to theyn : "yf ye be wyse holde you stytle, For I make a-vowe to god that yf ony of you moene to come to me I shal make of hys heed two partes," wherfore there was not one that durst ne that was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate, and there
vpon the noble Ogier came swutelye to Roulland and sayd to hym: “Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vncle the emperour, whom by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loute and defende & also supporte.” Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hysyre: “Syr Ogier, I promyse you for a lyteltayt I was determyned to a grete oultreage wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth.”

How the kyng charles and’ Roulland’ been repreued’ by the auctour and’ somewhat excused’ vpon the debate aforesayd’ : ca. v pon the debate of theemperour and’ Rolland’ hys nenewe I wyll a lytlyt tarye, and speke fy rst to the kyng’ Charles, whyche haste be Instructe syth thy lnfaneye in alle seyences ful of maners dignes of commemo racyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of the ancyeents and the mutablyte of the yonge peple, why saydest thou on the euene that the ancyeent and’ old knyghtes in the warre of that day hadden borne them better than the yonge knyhtes? And thou knewest wele that Olyuer was gretyly hurte by hys valyauncce, in suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol land’ thy neuewe hadde borne the grete burthen of the bataylle. And yf he hadde spoken folily thou ouchtest to have supported hys fy rst moeyng whiche is not in the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys at the word that sayth: “Vindictam differ donec pertranseat furor: That is to say thou oughtest to dylyate thy vengeaunce till the furour be passed, Thou sholdst not have smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it was wythoute aduys of grete dyeresyon, thou smotest hym semblably, wythoute aduys he drewe hys swerde

1 C ij, back,
Roland ought to have remembered
the respect he owed to his uncle,

according to the words of St. Paul:
'Peeke not an elder, but entreat
him as a father.'

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym
thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.
Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesiastes whyche sayth:
"Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:"
when 1 a man re.

Roland ovt in operibus iniurie & Iniurye it is not good that he doo
that whyche he may doo. And also it is when a per-
sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome
he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng is blamed, 8
of soo moche the more is he cuyll contente and wrothe.
For hys fayt is reputed for nought.

In lyke wyse was it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be
allowed & preysed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12
that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had done
better than the yonge, but now I wyl retourne to the, O
Rolland!, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh
in the suche audacete to speke ageynst thyn vncole 16
whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes
been worthy to be remembred? To hym which is
emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremer,
and to thyn vncole as taken debate and answere out.
rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre
hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-
let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy
swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remebrance the 24
obeyssaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou
were not admyseth of thys that thapostle saith: "ye
yonge men kepe your courage And put not the furour
therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte
preyset thamceynt knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou
haddest not doon wel. 2 And Saynt Poule saith in
hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is
more auncynt than hym self, but a man ought to en-
tretene and supporte hym as his fader, but the dede is
suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym
sayd to be lytel wyl he be hurtte that he be pacyent:

1 col. 2. 2 C iij.
OLIVER DETERMINES TO ACCEPT THE CHALLENGE OF FIERABRAS. 47

wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he spake it, And gladly to doo me say thynge but yf it be good.

How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst Fyerabras, notwythstandyng that he was hurt, after many wordes: capitulo vj

Charles appeals to his knights to settte who shal accept the chal-lenge. (190)

Naymes tries to cheer hym. (195)

Oliver hears how none can be found to accept the challenge. (200)

He calls for his arms. (205)

His wounds break out afresh.

1 col. 2.
For the grete loute and desyre that he had to the kyng [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squire that he shold bryng hys hys armes, For he wold arme hym for to goo Just ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thounour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde-ment no man ought to tarye to seeche hys honour and auauncement and renommee. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prync and syn-guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frenshe man 12 auaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wyth-oute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme hym by the sayd Garin hys squire, whiche sette on hys legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys har-nays necessarye. And when he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde 20 he moche loued.

After brought he hym hys hors the moost speccyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And when he was brought tofore hym alle saddled and brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the saddle wythoute settynge foot in the styrop, and sette hys sheld at hys case and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the kepyng he maade hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenaunce. And they that were presente by- sought Ihesu Cryst our redeamar that he shold take hym in hys kepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that ever

1 C iii. back.  2 col. 2.
was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is Fyerabras of Alexandrye, some of the admyral Ballant of spayne, of whom we shalle see by theplaysyr of 4 god the terrnymacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on horsback in grete poynct vpon hys vrysage and vpon his body he maad thys sygne of the crosse in the name of Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wylle of god,

8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comforte and ayde after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was byseen and knownen that he had hys hert hole in hys body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth 12 vnto the lyces of 1 themperour Charles with whom was the Due naymes, guyliam de scot, Gerard de mondye
dyer, and Ogyer the danoyes, wyth other barons of fraunce: & emonge alle other there was Rolande moche

16 soronful of the wordes thate he had ayenst his uncle the kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was 20 moche alowed & preyed of one and other & moche affectuously byhelden. And the said oluyer put down his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng; And reverently came & salewed hym, and after sayd to hym:

24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I remindes him of his long and faithful services,
28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yefte that I shal desire." To whom the kyng answeyr: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wylle. And

32 assure as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther eye, borough, ne castel that ye wyll haue ne none other thynge that to me is possyble & fasyble that shal be denyed to you." "Syr kyng," said Olyuer, "I am not comen

1 C iiij. 2 Ed. Freunce. 3 col. 2.

CHAII. ROM. III.
to you for to demande suche thyngye. But I demande and reuyrye of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure. And at thy word I graunte to you alle my goodes and servyces & for this yefte to be quyte 4 of them." Whan the freynshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abased of hys provyces & eche of them loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whych is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd Charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a sperre heed square and shapre thou hast be hurt and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandone thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyngye I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thy word Olyuer aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make mençyon.

"And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng; ye haue or-20 deygned in Fraunce that it, whych by ij of vs is lused, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Inge & ordlyne that Olyuer shalle goo and do 1 the bataylle:" wherfore the kyng ful of matalente, wyth coloure 24 chaunge, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of eyll dys-posycyon wythoute spekyng that whych is honourable. Synte it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28 my trouth that ye he be taken or put to deth at the gold of the world shal not sake the but that shal dye a vlayvous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32 kepe me!" & after the traytre sayd to hym sell secretly: "God forbede that euery Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan the emperour sawe that

1 C iiiij. back.
he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold goo and
do the batayle avenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye
god & the fyrmanente gyue the grace to do wele & that
thou mayst retorne wyth lyove," And took hys ryght
gloue and threuwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued
wyth grete desire & wylle in thankyng hym ryght
humbly and takyng lene of al moche swetely.

8 q. How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader
reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the
genaunt, but for al that he went forth:

12 Han that Olyuer was lyncened ffor to goo do
hys bataylle and was reddy to departe, Reyner
of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
grete compassyon kneled down at hys feete and sayd:
16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforthe me
whan I see that my sone goth to perdycon seeyng
the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded daungerously,
ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that
hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle."
24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen
to hym hys gloue in sygne of lyncence, And not-wyth-
stondyng these wordes doubted no thyng but that he
shold wel do hys deuoyr and valyantly. And yet
28 ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,
in thonour of hym that for vs deyed on the crosse
suftere not my sone to lust. Alas! whan I shal have
lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel
fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-
perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

1 col. 2.
I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunte. For in sygne of lyence I haue gyuen hym my gloue, wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayde wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name of god ye pardonne me," whan the fremsh men herde hym so speke There was none but that he Avejte tendery, and soo takynge lyis leue wyth his standarc.] Oliver rides up to Fierabras, and demands his name.


Fierabras tells him, and boasts of his exploits.

Oliver rides up to Fierabras, (344)

and demands his name. (351)
furthermore I holde Thersalume that fayre cyte, and the sepulcre in which your god rested." Olyuer ansuered: "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the sayt that whyche thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well unhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng make the redy and arme the, seest thou yonder the 8 frenshe men that doo no thynge but byholde vs but wherfore depesshe the, or by the god on whom I byleue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyest." when Fyerabras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to 12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens that Cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so hastyly, but for trouthe I shal alleualled fro hens tyll 2 I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage. And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt see me arme." Olyuer ansuered to hym: "O paynem, know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the 20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion of thy body and the salvacyon of thy soule thou leue the creaunce of thy god Mahoun, & of other ydolles, whyche ben but abusyon and decepcon: whych haue neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good understondyng. wherfore that thou enelyne the to consente and thynke fro hens forth to bylene in god almynyghty the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wylle: whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there in dwelleth: whyche for our salvacion wold be borne of the vyrgyn marie, & whan thou shalt haue this 32 bylene wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorye eternal, and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

1 Ed. For. 2 C v. back. 3 Ed. consccracion.
I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departhe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must 1 come and fyght ayenst ayenst me. For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe.” Fyerabras answerd: “whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalte be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charles.”

Oliver describes Charles and Roland. [ii. viii.

Fyerabras is surprised at his presumption, (102)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (125)
shiede and say'd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage." Olyuer say'd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am borne in perrogort, some of a man calle'd Josue, whychecame that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the. 8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yt thou be so hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was to litle to Iuste ayenst hym and say'd to hym: "Garyn, I demaund of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whycbe been of so grete renowne mee as I haue hert say?" Olyuer ansered: 16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the apostle of Ihesu Cryst that yt thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thy darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," ansered Fyerabras, "I shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me ouer grete dyshonour yt thou were put to deth by me, but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle down to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shiede and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yt I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme to be contente." Fyerabras says he never fights ex-cept with a king or a noble, (165) but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (470)
not have pacynce but that he sayd to hym: "Thy sayt lyrthis in noo thynghe but in wordes ful of folyshe pres-
sumpson. I am of thys intencion that byfoye euen-
songe tyne I shal make thy hede flec from thy sholdres. 4
I am none hare ne wyldc best for to be aferde, And
thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there
is a tyne of spekyng and tyne of beyng style, And of
one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8
come of & depesshe the of that I haue sayd the or
ellys I shal see the." Fierabras answerd: "I desyre
ne praye the of noo thynghe but that thou sende to me
Rolland or olyuer or one of thether knyghtes of the 12
rounde table. And yt one of them be not hardy to for
come, late come ij or iiij or iiij attones For by me they
shal not be refused." In makyng these desputacyons
Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16
opened by force of rydyng and of chauffyng & bledde
sore so that fierabras sawe the blood renne down by is
knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that
blood? that soo renneth down to therthe: "I trowe thou 20
be hurte." Olyuer sayd: "I am not hurte but my hors
is harde atte spore wherof he is blody." Fierabras be-
heclide & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd:
"Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24
in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blyod that cometh
down by thy knee; but see what I shal do for the:
there been two flagons hangyng on the sadle of my hors
whych ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28
Iherusalem, & it is the same of whych c your god was
embawme? wyth whan he was taken down fro the
crosse and layed in hys grave. hye the, and goo
drynyke thereof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32
thou shalt he hole and thesthe thou shalt movye defende
the wel wythoute daunger." Olyuer ansered that
he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

\[\text{1} \text{C vj. back.} \quad \text{2} \text{col. 2.}\]
How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded' arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name: ca.

W

Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wythoute aresyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and after sayd' "Garyn, I demaunde the wythoute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer that been soo moche redoubted' of paynems, & of what gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd' "as towcheyng to rolland' he is a lytel lasse of body than I am, but of courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.

For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world but he vaynquysshed' hym. and as for Olyuer thou mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am." Thenne sayd' Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a thynge wherof I am moche abasshed'. For yf they were suche foure as thou tellest to me. I wol not refuse them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue pacyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy to smyte hym, wherefore Fyerabras sayd' to hym: "thou wylt haue no pyte on thy owne persone, By mahoun my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng'ne alle thy goddes' shal not redeeme the but that thou shalt Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou tremble not for fere."

1 C vii.  2 Ed. persour.  3 Ed. goodes.
Oliver at last induces Fierabras to rise. (516)

He is 15 feet high.

If Oliver answereth: "Thou last vaunted the ouer-longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by ouer 1 moche spekyng otherwyse than trouthe may bryng the soone to myschyef." Herof was fyerabras strongly despyteous Am& roos on hys feet in a grete fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot longe. And yt he wold haue be baptysed and bylene in S Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure. And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by cause he had not a valyauute man to luste aganst hym, and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of thy affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou retorne Am& sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer, or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressly say to Olyuer 16 that I shall not passe thyg auautgarde tyl I haue conquer hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the paynym for yt it had not be for hys honour he had smyte hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he must nedes fyght Fyerabras calleth Olyuer and prayed hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer demandeth yt he myght truste hym. Fyerabras answereth: "helpe me hardlyly, For I swere and assure the that 24 neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his diligence 2to arme hym, and he took fyryth lethr of arabye and clade hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28 his habergeon of stele wele bouced & polysshed: & after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth precyous stones rychely. But wel consideryd the facyon of thyg paynym and of this cristen man there 32 was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to sle other, and yet they dyd eche to other sycnguler

1 col. 2. 2 C vij. back.
FIERABRAS TAKES HIS THREE SWORDS.

Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to destroye Olyuer. For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte when he sawe hym hunte and the bloode descende to therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, when he fonde hym dysarmed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded to arme hym that shold fyzt ayenst hym. O, what grete loylalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creanne contrarye! I suppose that god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche connynance emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse. But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras was wel armed he thanked moche Olyuer, And after gynde hys swerde name d plouranco, and in the arson of his sadyl he had twyne other of whom that one was named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I hawe founden by wrytyng. On a tyme there were made by one of three brothers, 24 thre brothern of one fader engendred, of whom that one was named Galaus, that other Munyfycans, & the thyrd was called Agnisiax. These iij brethern made ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiax the thyrd brother maad the swerde named baptysme, whiche had the pomel of golde & wel enamelled, & also plourance, and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes fyerabras had as I hawe sayde. Munyfycans, that other brother, made another swerde whyche was named durandal, Whyche Rolland had, that other was called samognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the danoys had. And galaus, that other brother, maad

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. plousance.
and by the third Joyous and Floberge.

Fierabras takes with him the two vessels of balm.

Of the nature of his horse.

Fierabras wishes Oliver to retire. (556)

Oliver refuses. (565)

Fierabras confines Oliver on his faith and loyalty to reveal his true name. (637)

The sword that was named Floberge, another called haulteclicer, and that other Joyouse, whyche Charlemayn had for a grete specey delve. and these iiij brethern aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swordes. 4 And in thyse poynshe Fyerabras mounted on hors backe And took hys two barylle by hym ful of bawme, And henge aboute his necke his sheld whiche was heuy and bended wyth yron and stel by meruayllous strengthe. 8 And in the myddle of the same sheld was paynted his god Appollyn. and after that he had commanded hym to hys god he took his spere ia his honde, whyche was sharpe & mortally heeded with stel. It was meruaylle 12 to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on hys hors named Feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, & pomellyd, whyche had a specyall condycyon:

For whan his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer-sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson than hys mayster. and thus they beynge on horsb.ck Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer: "O garyn, graeyous and curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without fyghtyng; For I have pyte of thy valyaunte courage."

Olyuer answerde: "alwaj^e thou spekest of grete folye for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys-membrec^.

For I am not he that thou wenest to make aferde: for by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the emperour." When Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28 was meruayllously abasshed f of thys man that wold not lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold hane the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym: "Thou art a crystyn man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche thou were baptysez, and by the fayth that thou hast gyun to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

1 C viij. 2 col. 2.
II. ix.]   OLIVER AGAIN BEGS FIERABRAS TO BECOME CHRISTIAN. 61

Oliver again begs Fierabras to become Christian.

nayled? And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of 
name and of thy lyngage.” Olyuer answerd: “Certes, Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche 
wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely 
myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherfore knowe thou 
8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, 
the moost especyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the 
twelue peres.” “In fayth,” sayd Fyerabras, “I alwaye 
thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest 
to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and’ that I coude not 
make the aferde vpon the fayt of bafcaylle. And how, 
sir Oliuer, 1are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete 
dyshonour for me to overcome you in bataylle & destroye 
you. For I aconste you but a dede man whycbe shold’ 
be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue 
don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world? I 
wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you.”

20 Thenne answerd Olyuer: “certeynye ye shal. For by 
my hede when we shal be assembled ye shal haue no 
courage to lape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you 
wel to fele that I am noo dede man.” And after Olyuer 
24 admonested hym sweletely in this manere and’ sayd: 
“O paynym, or we procede ony further now I admonest 
the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche 
hath made the and’ fourmed?, to whome al thynges owen 
honoure and’ synguler creaunce. For he that taketh 
not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And’ forsake 
Mahoun and’ thy goddes ful of abuse and’ decepceyon, & 
dyspose the to be baptysed?, & thou shalt haue to thy 
frende the grete charles and’ a speyall felowe of Rolland 
the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my 
lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye.” fyerabras 
ansuerd to hym: “thou remembrest a grete folye,

1 C viij, back.
The Saracen refuses.

For no thyng I shalle not blyeue in your god ne shal forthfoorth forsake ne abandonne Mahoun. But on thys day yt thou arte frendre of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he never as I shal make hym for the.

How Olyuer and fyerabras began to fy3t, & of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of other maters: capitulo x 8

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd: "my frendre, I praye the pot thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12 vertue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou shalt be heled & shal moy wul defende thy self ayenst me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke thou be conquerd of me but by franca bataylle and 16 harnoys fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete thayr horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Insta at vter-aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20 fere and drede lest it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd: "O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte of Olyuer my 2 baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24 ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after fermently came in to hys chapel hydyng his vyse wyth hys mantel and knued before the crosse and enbraced the crycufyx wyth grete teeres, sayeng: "My lord god, of whom I 28 see here the remembrance, I byseehe the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for theexaltacyon of the crysten sayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes upon thayr 32 sheldes that the hedes of their spers were by force bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

1 col. 2. 2 D j.
II. x.] OLIVER NEARLY UNHORSES FIERABRAS.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr spere were trouchonned that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wenote ouте of theyr hondes.

4 Bothe twayne were so astonede of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned, and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce

8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruaylously shynying & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the flores and precyous stones wherof it was ennobled and garnyshed made to flee to the grounde; and with the same stroke in descendying he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore

10 that bothe hys foot were ouте of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrown, wherof the frensh men sayden al wyth one voyes: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen to thys paynym!" "ye," 20 sayd rolland, "meruaylously he smote hym! ¶ Now wold god of heuen," sayd Rolland, "that I were now vnder the shielde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."

24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd: "Ha! enyl gloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuered no thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. Fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course

32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke sharply that he trenched moo than ve mayles, and hurte enyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. gyuen. 3 Ed. stoke.
Olivek calls on God and the Virgin for help. [II. x.

Olyuer rails on lord, god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke hane I receyued! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8 pyte of me! For overt fyersly cutteth the swerde of thy paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue hym:" and made vpon hym self the sygne of the crosse.

Oliver calls on God and the Virgin for help.

Fyerabras again offers to let him go. On account of his wound.

but Oliver defies him. [507]

habundantlly & the swerde of fyerabras was at bloedy; of whiche stroke olyuer was moomed & troubled that he had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye: ¶ "O lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke hane I receyued! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8 pyte of me! For overt fyersly cutteth the swerde of thy paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue hym:" and made vpon hym self the sygne of the crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym: "Olyuer, by Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maاف the aferde: now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no meruayll though thou commaunde the to thy god," but I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16 stroke. ¶ Neuertheless be sure that thou shalt not see the somme goo to reste for thou begynnest now to chauinge colour and thy fyerce manere: neuertheless I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20 be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my strengthe: for I warne the of one thyng that when I see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24 charles louetli the not moche when he sendeth the to me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte shetes thon haddest been moche better." when Olyuer herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a fercuent 28 courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd: "O Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god almyghty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32 I defyfe the! we haue ouer long pleted." vpon these wordes they ranne to-gyder, smytyng meruayllously eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

1 D j, back. 2 col. 2.
naylles, and crochettes, precious stones, or saueryes, and
floures been hewen, broken, and flowne to the grounde.
the fyre yssue oute largely, makyng grete bruyt with
the swerdes vpon their harnoys. In this whyle Charles
was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele
of Olyuer was trewe and luste and that god ought to
preserve hym, and when he thought that Olyuer myght
8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd: "O
gloryous god, for whome we take payne, I praye the to
conserue olivere that he be not slayn ne taken. For I
swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn
12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in any chirche
shal clerke ne preest be renested ne enhabyted, but I
shal do brene monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & cruycy-
fyxes." “Alas,” sayd Duc naymes, “Syr kyng, leue
16 these wordes vayne and ydle, & praye god for Olyuer
that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys
whyle perseuered the ij champyons fyghtyng and smyt-
yng eche on other in suche maner that Fyecrabras wyth
20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made
hym callee on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf
he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys
body and speyally in the breste and had thenne loste
24 soo moche of hys blood that he was moche feble, whyche
was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of moder.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god’ when
he felte hym hurte: capituloxj

Oluer the noble erle beyng in this malaneolye of
the grete wounds that he had in hys body took
his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory-
ous god, cause & begynnynge of al that is aboue & vnder
the fyrmamente, which for your owne playser foured

1 D ij.
our fyrst fader Adam and for hys companye gauest vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is conceived, gynyng to them lyncence to ete al maner fruytes reserved one only one, of whyche Eue by the mocyng of the serpentyt caused Adam to ete, wherfore they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of helle many haue ben deccyued & dampted: wherof ye had pyte of the perdyczyon of the world and came for to take fleshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious vyrgyn mare by theannuncyacion of the holy Aungel Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased you. And anon after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys-1 saunce and wyth golde, encence, and myrre made to you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be slayne many children, whiche now been in loye per-manaible. And when ye were in age by you deter-16 myned ye went in the world prechyng to your frendes. Thenne afterward by thennyous Iewes ye were hanged on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde; & 20 whan he byleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your precious blode he recouerd his syjt fayre & clere & cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture: 2 the thyrdf day after aroos and took ageyn lyf and descended in to helle, And took out Adam and Eue and al them that were worthy to haue paradys. And the day of your meruayllous ascenyon ye ascended in to heuen in the 28 presence of al your apostles. Thus my god, my maker, as thys is trouthe and I byleue it verayly and fermly, be ye in my conforte ageynst thyys myscreaunte that I may vaynquysshe hym in suche wyse that he may be 32 saued." And this said he blessyd hym with his swerde in makyng the sygne of his crosse in the name of god the holy trynyte, and smote his hors vpon the hope of

1 col. 2. 2 D ij, back.
the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayde to hym lawhyng:

"Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my god termagaunt I wolde gladly here it." "Now wolde god of heuen," sayd Olyuer, "that thou were in suche grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo, For I assure the I sholde love the thenne as moche as I doo Roulland." "And Fyerabras answerd to hym: "by my god Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche grete folye?"

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd' the bawme & drauke therof at hys case, and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors was slayn: capitulo xij

16 Fyerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of olyuer in grete Ire sayd to hym: "kepe the wel fro me, for I deffye the!" "I am redy," sayd Olyuer, "for to god I commaunde me." & so thenne they recounted

20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that the fyre myst haboundantlye be seen spryngge oute of theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys sweerde in hys honde and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eye turned in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunged.

24 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyne marie that he wold name his soule. Fyerabras by grete curtosye sayd to hym: "Olyuer, vnderstonde me, descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and drynke at thyn ease, and amone thou shal be al guar-ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

1 col. 2.
Oliver drinks some of the balm, and is cured of his wound.

Oliver drinks some of the balm, and is made whole again.

Oliver pierces Fyerabras' thigh.

He drinks some of the balm, and is made whole again.

Oliver cuts the cord by which the vessels are tied.

Oliver throws the vessels into the river.

defende the ageynst me and thou shalte recoure newe strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng me that he coude do though he shold dye he wolde not, For by trewe fightyng he wolde haue it. And anone came that one ageynst that other and smyte in suche wyse that Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the blood that yssed oute alle the grasse was reed. And when he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorowful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made to god their prayers devoutly that he wolde conserue that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche emong al other loued hym moast entvyly. But whan Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by whyche the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a lytel course by the playesyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, & anon he was al hool & reconfermed in newe strengthe, & thought that by aduenture fyerabras were more hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. Wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the barylles & threwe them therin whyche were anone sunken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt Johan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water euydentlly. whan fyerabras sawe that the barylles were loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde & by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

1 D iiij.

2 col. 2.
thou arte, thou hast loste my baryles whyche were more worth than al the golde in the world: but I promyse the that or it be even they shal to the ben dere solde, For I shall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy heed:" and thy sayeng he came ayenst hym, but Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the 8 defence wyth his shielde to auyde the stroke. Neuertheles Fierabras smote hym so hard hat his helme was amy breaks & broken, Tnit he was not hurte, & the stroke descended so inpytuously hat he cutte asondre the 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and the mne was Olyuer on fote, but a grete myracle it was of the hors of fyerabras that maad no semblauyte 1 to renne vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd? 16 byfore, but helde hym style aboue hys propre custome.  

How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten to-gyder afote merveyllously, and' of the prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer: 
capitulo viij 

Oche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.  

The French wish to help Oliver, but Charles forbids them. 

Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful & came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to hym: "o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the foule this day ageynst me. In the mornyng thou hast so moche preysed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and

1 D iiij, back.
conquer them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage.”

Fyerabras answerd: “I knowe wel that thou sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Nenertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende doun of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors ponche: And I promyse the thou shalt be well hourse. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abasshed as whan he sawe the erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede.” Olyuer answerd: “I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquerede and Insilie womne.” wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: “Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the 1 wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:” and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Insted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the tranaylle that they toke. Thus contynueng the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto 2 other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys hal grete pyte on Olyuer. Themne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: “O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym nyghe to me in helthe.” Incontyment Charles seyng thys sayd: “O lor god, yf ye suffe that Olyuer be overcome and that my ryght at

1 col. 2.  
2 D iiiij.
thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make anowe that al crystyanthe shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter. & 4 after kneled down with bothe his knees to the grounde & prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for our saucyoun was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie in bethlehem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious 8 byrh al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys world ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed you to ordeyne: of whiche adam ete & was dysobey-saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for 16 to redeeme hym fro eternal captuyyte & vs also ye were contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after that the traytour Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortaly 20 nailled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of thones: and after Longyus smote you in the ryght syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he had leyed on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe 24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke out your frenedes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for your lyeutenaut saynt Peter thappostle in erthe; and 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to make vs crysten for to hauie saluacyon. O lord, as alle thys is truth & that I blyue it stedfastly, so on thys day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed." ¶ He thys sayeng & other denoute wordes in hys secrete oratorye Our lord sente to hym an aungel fro heuen whyche sayd to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperor

1 Ed. knees.  2 col. 2.  3 Ed. traycour.  4 Ed. Out.
and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver, which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of his hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from God for to say to the that thou doubt no thynge of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wynne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquysshe the paynym." Thys sayd, the anfgeł departed and charles thanked God devoutelye for his glorius medytacyon. Neuer-theles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer mad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll严格落实 to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whiche sawe the stroke comyng denounced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryjt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquyssed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo eoneytons in smytynge that his honde in 16 whiche he helde his swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the Payne that he had of smytynge, and he desyryng to smyte hys enemye at viternance hys swerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moeued 20 and abasshed—and it was no menaylle—and moche courageously raunce for to take vp his swerde, And layed hys shielde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstoodyng the paynym smote 2hym twyes so myghtyly that he brake hys shielde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde: and moche sodeynlye the frensshe 28 men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyd of his swerde armed them anone and were in purpoos to reyne upon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer, but Charles wold not consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that God is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for ye he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

1 D iiiij, back. 2 col. 2.
FIERABRAS PRESSES OLIVER TO RENOUNCE CHRISTIANITY.

hym. and notwythstandyng al thys the paynym dyd but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I haue opteyned vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but

4 wherfore darst not pou take thy swerde I knowe now well that thou art ynotin ravenquysshed sythe that thou art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the tresour of the world, and I am wel contente for t.

8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that thou holdest, the baptesme that thou haste receyued & the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whom thou hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god?

12 ful of bounte, & I shal suffre the to lyne & more ouer

I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-

16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer answert to hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for god forbid that ever I sholde be of entencion to forsake

20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his holy sacrements which have been establysshed for my saucyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes ful of abusyon: which haue neyther strengthe ne

24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayt to hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not denye thy fayth, & of one thynge which is more grete

28 thou mayst wel auannte the. For neuer was I of persone so trouailled ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou oughtest wel to be prayed. I am contente that thou take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute com-

32 petent wepen thou mayst not prenayle ne more than a woman." Olyuer answert: "Paynym, I can not say the contrarye but that thou ofrest to me seruyce and bounte, but for the valewe of x thousand marke of

1 D v. 2 Ed. for rny. 3 Ed. thou. 4 col. 2.
but Oliver refuses, gold I wyl not take it, ne for to deye thefore. For 
yf I had recover'd my swerde by thy curtosye And it 
hafted that thou were vnder my puyssance and thou 
thenne demaundest of me amytye & frendshyp & thenne 4 
[I] put the to deth it shold to me be wylte and reproche. 
And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wylle of 
god to whom I haue gyuen my selfe ouer. But and yf 
I may wynne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 
deye, For other thynge shalt thou not haue." ¶ "By 
my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquyd-
rous & gloruous, wherfore be thou sure that shortly thou 
shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was van-
quysshed by Olyuer after that he had' 
recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabras: 
capitullo viij 16

Fyerabras comes 
against Oliver, 
who, looking 
round in fear,

sees the Saracen's 
horse, on which 
are two swords, 
He runs and seizes 
one, Baptism,

W

Han Fyerabras herde that Oliver was so fyers 
of paynt and of courage he had' grete meryallie. 
For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he 
myght by Iuste warre conquerre it, wherfore the paynym 20 
dysmesurably came ageynst hym and 
held in hys 
hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no mer-
nyalle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he 
beynge dyspourued of swerde & of shield, For that 24 
was broken in two partyes. but as it played to god he 
voke'd besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and 
on the arson of the salde were ij other swerdes of which 
I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28 
quykely and took one of the swerdes whych was named 
baptesme, whyche had' the blade moche large and shone 
meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put 
tofore parte of hys shield suche as was lestte. and whan 32 
he was ngyhe hym he began to say: "O kyng of 
1 D v, back.
Alexandrye, now is tyme to compote. For I am pourneved of your sverde of whych I shal make you wroth & kepe you wel from me for I haue defyed you.”

4 Thenne when Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so spoke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: “O baptym, good sverde, I haue kepte the many a day for one of the beste that ener henge by my syde or by ony 8 mans that is lyuyung!.” And after behelde olyuer sayeng: “By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne sverde and late me haue myn and thenne late vs fyght 12 as we haue begonne.” “by my hede,” sayd Olyuer, “that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make ony pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys sverde vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long 16 haue we sermoned?” Thys sayeng & other thynges Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote hym fyrst, but he myst not attayne hym on the hede but that he recounted first the shilde of the paynym, 20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half flew in the feld. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of that stroke For abowe alle thys the sverde wyth that stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne 24 olyuer blessyd hym that had forge of that sverde and so wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they were in partye descounerd of theyr helmes. And when Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers 28 and courageous he sayd: “O lord god of heuen, maker of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I 32 shold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone 2 that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may bylene in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

1 col. 2. 2 D vj.
THE FIGHT CONTINUES WITH VARYING SUCCESS.

enhanced." Fierabras answered in this manner: "Olyuer, here such words: tell me if thou wilt fight like as thou hast enterprised." "Ye," said Olyuer, "keep the well from me for I defy thee," and he named upon him: and Olyuer was smytton first upon his shield by such fiercenesse that he smote his shield in pieces nyghe to his fyste, and it was maruaylle that he cut it not of: wherefore Fierabras said that he had put him in such case that he stold not longe lyne in this world. Olyuer said no word but came with his sword ayenst the paynym Fierabras moche furiously.

Thenne the paynym that sawe the stroke come throwe his shield ayenst Olyuer wherefore anone it was quartred, and was so astoned that the eyen in his heed were al troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen springe oute of the swordes and shieldes moche habundantlye. And thus in smyting Fierabras said in this manere: "now is the houre come that thou shalt never have aye of thy god Ihesus in whome thou blyenest, [but] that anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer-comen. And Olyuer anone answered: "Ihesus is wel myghty for to shewy hys puysaunce. But anone thou shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not mowe aye the ne be so myghty but that thou shalt be deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smytton on the helme al vnto the flesse in suche wyse that al that the sworde araught it share and passed thorough, & the manne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer answered: "O Fierabras of alexandrye, be not thou so proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede or vaynquysshe, & god graunte to me that whyche I haue alwaye desyre!" And therupon ech smote

1 col. 2.
other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe sweete for anguysshe and Payne. Fyerabras smote Olyuer vpon the helme soo soarde that the stroke came to the flessh, and yf god had not wrought he had be slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe hys shilde so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme & hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was Auyse & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote Fyerabras ovver thrusts ims sword ill between hys flanke so mightly & contynued in suche wyse the ribs, that he thrested his swerde in one of hys fiankes wel depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled of the bloocP. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his bely, For thenne at that stroke Olyuer employed al his strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe foughten.

How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' bye-leued' in god', and' how he was borne by Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled' of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

After that the Paynym was smyton and hurt mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he myght nomore resyte ayenst Olyuer, by the vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he had knowleche of the errore of the payynms and lyfte vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy trynyte and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer & valyauht kunght, in thonour of god on whome thou byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy and reyure the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed & yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

1 D vj. back. ² col. 2.
whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal bylene in
the crysten fauth & shal yecke the replyques for whyche
ye be assemblyd & have taken soo moche payne.
And I swere to the that yf by thy defaute I dye sarasyn I
make to the culpable of my damnacyon, And yf thou
take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.
Thou shalst see me deye tofore thy eyen wherfore in
the honour of god have pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8
moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore
wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a
tree and there bounde his mortal wounds in suche
wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12
paynym prayed hym that it myght plese hym to bere
hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan
Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was
not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16
hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and
redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me
to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,
for al my body bledeth, take that hors and mounte 20
theron and come as nyghe to me as thou may and yf I
may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst
lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. & Now
hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and lye and 24
depesse the, For thyss day in the morning I lefte in
the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand
men whyche been al my subgettes, & commandd them
that none shold moeue tyl I were retorned fro the 28
bataylle." Whan Olyuer understood hym he was al
afrayed and abashed for fere, but not wythstondyng
he sayd: "Syr kyng; sythe that it plese you I am
contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32
& went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And
sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the
subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

1 D vii.
bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of nonymbres, and the kyunge of Mantryble; after hym maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy that he my3t not goo so faste as his enemies came to hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyms come in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them. And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon-dydyer, Guyllan the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geflfroy lantiguy, Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, Aubert, semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not. Olyuer sawe alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore thother brillant of mommyere which rode on an hors as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge the other. For it semed as it had be thonder and tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle enuened wyth the blood of a crapaud and was ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al amoeced and abasshed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys manere: “Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may no ferther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllousely sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte.”

Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: "O noble Olyuer, wyl ye now lene me? Ye haue conquerd me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be reputed noblesse determined whan I am yours and ye forsake me. Alas poure sorrowful and caytyf that I am, yf I dye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

---

1 col. 2. 2 Ed. veys. 3 D vij, back.
Oliver promises not to desert him,

and arms himself in Fierabras' armour. (518)

Brilliantly charges at and wounds him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras down (825), and tries to escape,

but seeing it is in vain, utters a prayer.

draws his sword, and turns to meet the Saracens. (532)

am to returne me to you!" And after he sayd to Olyuer: "I am conquer'd by the and haue promised to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou oughtest lytel to be preyed." Olyuer answerd: "Fy- erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I anowe to god and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal defende the as long as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste therto." & there vpon he took the hauberck of the sarasyn and wyth suche as he my3t haue he armed hym, & prestly he abylled hym and put on his heed an hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12 haultceulre, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. & herupon came amone brillant wyth his faus darte & atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke so that the dart brake. theone said fierabras: "Syr 16 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte. late me descende doon and laye me a-parte out of the waye to thende that I be not defouled of these sarasyns, ne taken and destroyed." Thereof had Olyuer 20 grete compassyon & layed Fyerabras in the shadowe of a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye, and whan he wolde haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns and sayd: "Alas! god! Ihesus, my creatour, thou knowest myn entenyeon. I requeyre the to gyne me grace that I deye not at thy myrne present vnuto the tyme that for thexaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rol- land my felaue;" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28 haultclelre and came in to the waye, & the first that he recontreth was the sone of the grettest lord that was there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he cleft hym to the breste and laye doon dede. & Olyuer was abylle 32 & deluyer, and took fro hym hys shield whiche was al newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys, & also he had his sperre & lote hys hors renne emonge 1 col. 2.
the myscreaunte. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornyng he slewe thre sarasyns & they rame tofore hym as sheep tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on hym marabas, Targys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys to-gydre: "by Mahoun our god, thou fre/^sshe man thou shalt not escape vs; kepe the wel 1 for by vs thou shalt deye!" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his euemyes and smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarasyms smote on hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of2 shotte and of strokes his hors was slayn vnder hym. And he beyns on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos and beyns afoot sette hys sheldre tofore hym whyche he had goten, and helde fast haultclare whyche was alle hys conforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome he raught fyl doun and was slayn. It is not redde in ony book that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

"How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteously, & myght not be socoured' by the Frensshe men: ca. xvij"

Olyuer was a[l] alone on fote emonge the sarasyns ageynst whome he made grete resystence & meruayllous: but it is not a thynge possyble that he myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym so sore that hys sheldre was percefed in 4 moo than xxx places: & whan hys hauberk was broken & percefed wyth foure sharpe dartes they percefed and wounded hym in his body meruayllously. Wherfore by veray force & for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

1 D viij. 2 Ed. and. 3 Ed. xvij. 4 col. 2. G
He cries on Charles for help. (912)

and on Roland. (913)

Maradas mocks him. (914)

Roland and the other douzeperes charge the Saracen. (915)

each kills a Saracen. (915)

Guylliam, Gualtier, and others are slain (968), and

moche outrageously, and after blynsfelde his eyen & bonne hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonne hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourneyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comforte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he kneue not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compass 8 syn of hert he sayd: “O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembrest not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art all a slepe, am I deef or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?” These and suche other complaynutes makyng the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: “Frenshe man, whatsomuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged.” These saraysns ranne wyth olyuer, his eyen blynsfelde and his bonde strayntly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thene vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to save Olyner. wyth grete cyes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brillant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer 28 throwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the saraysns that they were al emaussed to holden them to-gyders and to go their waye, but the other paynynys that conduyted Olyner wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guylliam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moyen people & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

1 D viij, lack.
dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn
they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode aweye
wyth them hastely. but when charles sawe theym thus
4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an
lyghie voys cryed: "sae, kepe, and socoure the barons.
O kny3tes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede
awaye the barons 'neuer shal ye fare wel." whom the
8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moene as enragd
smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wenete
down of a mountayn. And there was Eolland' that helde
Roland in the front. hys swerde durandall drawen for tauenge hym fyersly,
12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the
deth. For he was al enragd by cause that they ledde
awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he
clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
16 rolland bare hym myghtely : by cause of the multytude
of the payynms he myght not passe forth for to socoure
the barons prysonners and chaced them more than
v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery.
And not wythstondyng Rolland' sware that he wold
neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro
the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo.
The sarasyns that were tofore went sleyng alwaye at
theyr playtsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what
he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the payynms
28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And
therefore by force they must leue the feld in ry3t grete
dysplayrs & anguysshe; and so al they returned.

The second' partye of the second' book con-
teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the
tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how
they that were taken spaken to ballant
thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geoffrey taken prisoners. (973)
The French try to rescue them. (982)
Roland in the front.
They chare them for more than five miles,
till night came on, (1015)
when they were compelled to turn back. (1020)

1 col. 2. 2 E j.
How Fyerabras was founden by Charles, and after was baptysed' and heled' of his wonde: ca.

After that Charles knew that he myght not haue ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to hym to retorne wyth his people for the nyght was theune to them gresous; & also in retornyng they fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshyng, to whom the king said: O vnhappy paynym, I ouȝt wel to hate the for by the been my men prysonners and loste, thou hast take fro me eliner one of the best byloyued that I had emonge al thumayn creatures: hym þat hath be synguler to mayntene my goode name, & by the in the ende in stede of Toye thou yeldest me sourowe." whan fyerabras vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd: "O ryche emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, In thonour of 1goð I crye the mercy & pardone me. It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquere me, I shall not hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shall be crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yeled me to Ihesus the creator of the world. And I reuys the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of my wounds I shal enhauce to my power the crysten fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten; and yf by my moyan the holy seculere & the holy reliques shal be delyuered, for whom ye take grete payne and tranaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in whom I now bylene that I am more heuy & sory for Olyuer that noble knyȝt whiche is taken prysonner than I am for my body whyche is mortaly wounded, & by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones; wherfore conclude we that I be crystned, For yf I deye sarasyn it shal be to you reproche."
II. i.  

FIERABRAS IS BAPTISED BY THE NAME OF FLOREN.  

saw hym so hugely membred they al were abasshed of his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed he was one of the semelyest men that euers was. 

4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour to Olyuer that had foughten & overcomen suche a man; and as he was vnclothed partye of hys woundes opened and began to bledde wherof hys hert most doun. And in al haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for th[at] chebysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche lystous of this that the paynym shold be crystened, & after that the baptisme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he was called) Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a bedde honourable. 

12 he was a saynt and god shewed for hym myracles, and is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thonrne anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycznes & surgyns wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng. 

In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was present & sayd to fyerabras: "yf now olyuer & the other barons were here present tofore the we shold wel be contente." And charles was thonrne al pencyf and heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys ba-rons prysoners, but he maad no more semblaunte. 

How Olyuer & his felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in pryson: capitulo 

32

The Saracenys after they had the barons of fraunce tofore named for prysoners they taryed not but ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named

1 E j. back. 

2 col. 2.
Balan laments over the loss of his son. [II. ii.]

Agrymore; and at the entre of the sayd ye sowned and blewe vp trumpes makynge grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them & fonde there ballant of mommyer, to whome he sayd: "O ballant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and aeffayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they dyscomfyte?" Ballant sayd to hym: "sjt admyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almoost defeated and dyscomfyte'. For of hys puysuunce it is a meruayllous thynge. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vyinquysshed, by one of his barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vyinquysshed & dyscomfited in loyal batayl without doyng any treson." whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an hye voys: "O dolaunt unhappy that I am! ha! poure caytyf! what shal bycome of me? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas? wherfore were thou taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had reproche? & O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth: I had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to deth:" & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl deuon to the grounde and cryed: "O ballant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and captayn of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal Smyte oute the brayne of Mahommet the god whiche hath promyse to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self and yolden." Thus sayeng alle in a rage he tormented.
hym self greuously vpon the grounde. And when thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-
manded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyght that hath 
4 vaynquys-\(^2\)-shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd: 
"Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde 
knyght:" in shewyngh Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel 
formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen 
8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "lye 
you & brynge hym to me for I shal nuer ete tyl he be 
dysmembred," when the frenssh men vnderstode that 
he wold do put Olyuer to deth, which was al theyr 
12 conforte, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche 
vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them 
sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyms wyst not 
what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe 
16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myȝt know that we be of 
the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned, 
for no thyngh shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal 
deye shamefully, wherfor I praye you that we al say as 
20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frenssh men 
prysoaners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he 
councellyed them. after that thadmyral had comanded 
them to come tofore hym the paynyns vnarmed them 
24 & bonde faste theyr bondes & blynfelde theyr eyen, 
wherof they were moche greuely & daungerously hurt: 
& anon thadmyral furiously demaundd olyuer: "\(\text{\textit{pou}}\) 
frenssh man, beware that \(\text{\textit{pou}}\) lye not but say to me the 
28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer 
ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto 
a yeman of poure lygne, and was borne in lorayne & 
cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour, 
32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght: 
& also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure 
knyghtes adventurous & haue enterprysed payne to 
serne our kyng, by cause \(\text{\textit{pat}}\) by our servyce we myȝt 
be auauenced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde,"

1 Ed. grousde, \hspace{1em} 2 col. 2, \hspace{1em} 3 E ij. back.
“O Mahoun,” said thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbarcas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depesshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my daries wel sharped wyth yron, & I shall shote at them and Smyte hem at my playser.”

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (114)

After that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commanded that the Frenshe men were sette in
gernous pryson bramatont the geayler made Olyuer & his feawes to anale down in to a pryson moche dangerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde

4 that no lyȝt myght be seen: in the which were put & nouryshed serpentes, crapanuldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stench was comprysed. and there passed a streame of the salte

8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe when the tyde was passed. & or the kepaw of the pryson went he blynfeld them & shot the dore abone them, & they beyng in this fylthe

12 and stench anone the water came so habundantly that the poure frenesh men were in the water vnto their shotdres. Thence the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys

16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete. But in espeyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessyte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes

20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl doun a swoune & had be dede that tyme he had be gherard de mondedyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned

24 seeyn that the water grewe alwaye. ye shall unnderstonde that in that pryson of adventure were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myȝt not helpe hym. & whan

28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguyssh he waylled & sayd: "o poure man & unhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?"

32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me." this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr olyuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a kyght as ye be it apperteyneth

1 E iii. 2 col. 2.
not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self &
traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we
that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good
swerde in his hande onely : for I make a vowe to god 4
that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed
I shold put to deth iiij sarasyns or moo." the frensshe
men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd\* in
suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the syster 8
of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had
grete compassyon of j\* complayntes that Olyuer made,
this doughter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed
of body ; resonable of lengthe, 1\* whyt & rody as rose in 12
maye. hyr heyre was shynyng as the fyne golde, & hir
vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe : and hyr chere
lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as faweon mued, & sparklyng
lyke ij sterris. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16
her nose strayt whiche was wel semely ; the ij browes
whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe ;
hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel
tyssued with reed\* ; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20
roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynme
al wel proporcione\* to the remenaunte of the hede :
with lytel sholdres straye & egally : & tofore aboue the
gyrule hir pappes were reyseyd after the facyon of ij 24
apples, rounde and even as the coppe of a \*ij tel mon-
tayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple
meruayllously ryche fyllod\* & pouldred\* with sterres of
fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrye, & it 28
was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght
neuer be poysone\* of herbe ne of venym. And florypes
was so fayre wyth hyr abyllements that yf a persone
had fasted iiij or iiiij dayes with out cyng; & he myght 32
see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer
she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colches
of a woman of the fay-\*rye (there as lason gate the

1 E iiij, back.  
2 col. 2.
flise of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye almoost at the begynnynge) whiche mantel had so swete an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte 4 of this damosel ech e man meruaylled. & as I have said tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe men in pryson & in especyel of Olyuer of whome she had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle where as the paynyms were moche desolate for fyerabras whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded & is tode of her brother's capture.

12 tydynges they tolde hyr pot hir broder fyerabras was taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. the? ne was al the sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for brutamont & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde she asks Brutamont who the prisoners are. (1216) She tells her. (1219)

20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creauke, and sette a nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyera- bre your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete 24 valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer was knowen, and' hath ben so myghty that he conquerd in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone floripes had enuye to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke Floripas wishes to see and speak with them. (1226) but Brutamont refuses to open the door. (1225)

28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl knowe of theyr fayt." Brutamont answerd and sayd: "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them by cause of the fylthe and dyshoneste of the place: it apperteyneth not to you. and' on that other syde your fader hath defended me that noo persone shal approche the pryson. And' I remembre me now wel that oftymes by a woman I have knowne somme shamed & deceyued." E iiiij.
Floripas is enraged, (1231)

and with a staff

strikes him on the head and kills him, (1251)
and throws him into the dungeon. (1257)

Floripas opens the door,

and asks the prisoners who they are. (1266)

Oliver answers her. (1268)

Floripas offers to release them if they will promise to do what she wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises. (1284)

when floripases understood she was for angre almoost fro hyr self and sayd to hym: "O euyl glouton despytous, oughtest thou to yene me suche langage? I promise the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she made semblamute to opene the pryson and brutament gaynsayd it, & sodeynly she, sayng the porter wythstonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage but s she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl down & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the frenshe men were: wherof they were sore aferde an? 12 abasshefl when they herd hym, wenyng to them that it had be the denyl which wold have tempted & deceyued them. Thenne anone floripases dyd doo lyght a torche & dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16 to see the prysonners, & cam nyghte to the pyler & sayd to them: "O ye lorde, telle to me what ye ar & how ye be named: hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer answerd & said: "My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20 men of charlemayns, & hau ben bronght hyther to thadmyral, which hath commaunded vs to be here in thys cruel prison: & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to be dysmembred & dye than tabyle in this place." the 24 curtoys floripases, not-withstondyng but she was not crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon and said to them: "I promise you that I shal put you out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer answerd: "therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, & Faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32 shal be, & be ye sure that we shall neuer hayle you as longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so but we be furnysshed of armes & been abone for to meddle wyth

1 col. 2. 2 E iiiij, back.
FLORIPAS RELEASES THE FRENCH KNIGHTS FROM THE DUNGEON.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may anaunte you ouer
moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute
and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It
is better a man wyscly to be stylle than follysshly to
spke." Gherard sayd\i to the lady: "Damoyse, I shal
saye to you one worde, he that is deteyned\i and strongly
empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and
melancholye." And\i Floripes byhelde gherard the
curtoys whyche excused\i Olyuer of that whyche he
spake ouer hardly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

For of the loye that olyuer had whan the lady said to
hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought
theme to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the
lady sayd to gherard:\i "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel
say and excuse your felowe redyly. And\i I bylacne
veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in
somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in
loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillam
the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame,
ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro
hens vnto iiijC myle ye shal not fynde hys perc.

\[ How the frensslie men were put oute\i of
pryson and were vysyted\i by the noble
mayde Floripes and\i of the beaulte of hyr
chaumbre: capitulo

\[ capitulo

Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr
wyth the barons prysonners she called hir
chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe
bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it doun. And\i when
the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo
vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyyn drewe hym vp by
grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly
DESCRIPTI0X OF THE CHAMBER OF FLORIPAS. [II. iv.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1328)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4 Aboue the chyef yate was made by grete seyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fyssh were there paynte of all fygures & lyke-nesse by meruayllous facyon: & after some scripture the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambr was built vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned by the see, and in one of the quarters 1 was a gardyn 12 pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherein flouris ne fuytes faylle& neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladie of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16 And with the fayre Floripas were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmodyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Floripes: "A, madame, I knowe wel these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera-bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which ofstymes hath be praysef & honoureft. And there is william de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour when she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyneyt hyr Ire ayenst hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet whyche cam to hyr prestly and threwe

1 E. v. 2 col. 2.
the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tombled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr:

4 "Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frenshe men that ben here ne shal never be encombrede ne in daunger by the." and herof the barons made grete Ioye;

8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frenshe men and kyssed them swetely, & whan she sawe oluer, whyche was al blody, and knewe wel that he was hurt; she sayd to hym: "Syr Olyuer, ne doubt ye not for thou hast my selfe in good helthe:" and wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: & anone as oluer hadde vse of it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beynge in this noble chambre

12 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourneyed of al good vytyllle and delycious metes, of whyche they hadde grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they hadde endured, and after

20 mete they had the baynes chaufled, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at their ease; and at the comynge out of the baynes they were wel adoubled wyth mantels ryche of sylke & golde broyled, & theonne

24 Floripes sayd: "lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my selfe in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath here vs. For ye of adventure it were

28 knownen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do repreef. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abasshed: ye knowe

32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you." and after the sayd Florypes sayd:

"lordes, I shal say to you there is a kyght in fraunce that no man hath loued; he is named guy of

1 E v, back. 2 Ed. fraunce.
bourgoyn, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the mystry Rolland. ¶ On a tyme whan I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admiral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynmys & the saydent guy of bourgoyne Insteden togyder, but the saydent guy valyanatly smote hym downe to 8 the orthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyde me, And took in gree the valyanunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue 1 hym not to husband? I shal neuer marye. And for the lone of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & blysly in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frens she men were moche loyous, and gyuen grete thankynge to god for the good wyll of thyse frayre rayde, and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr: 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armes & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayde: "lrodys, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 aifayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse: Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme: & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 when fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynyn had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wyll of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tymdynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyde ayenst the kep of the pryson & how they were taken 2 outhe That was the werke of a man wel approved?, and it had ben grete

1 col. 2.  
2 E vj.
II. ii. 5.] REYNER DECLARES HE WILL GO SEEK FOR HIS SON. 97

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the 
fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for 
the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned 4 
heuen, and many other terryn men victorie of theyr 
enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the 
fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of 
god is nyghe for to delyuer to. The cause wherfore 8 
they were delyuered fro pryson was come fro ferre, that 
was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whom she had in 
love, and was contente for to be baptysed and bylenue in 
god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus- 
bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how lone 
in thys damoyysel was fyxed and comprysed of lange 
affecltion, the which was cause of sanyng of the pry- 
sorners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad- 
myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whych 
wold' not haue goon: capitulo  v 

The Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myst not 
slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he 
haad for his sone, whan he myght no longer 
endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym: 
"Syr Emperour, for the louve of god' haue pyte on me! 
24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone, 
for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe? yf I haue 
one other tydynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan- 
colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo 
28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was mouted  and says he must 
and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,  go and find him. 
& sente for Rolland & sayd to hym: "Fayre neewe 
rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornyngr 32 
thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant 
thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the 
Reyner is in great 
grief for his son, (112b) 

Charles tells 
Roland that he 
must go to Balan, 
the next morning. 

1 c vj, col. 2. 

CHARL. ROM. III.
and demand from him the relics and the release of his prisoners. (1136)

Roland remonstrates,

as also does Naymes. (1146)

Charles says Naymes shall go too. (1152)

Basyn protests, and Charles orders him to go also, (1158) and likewise Terry, (1172)

Ogier, (1180)

Richard of Normandy, (1189)

and Guy of Burgundy, (1480)

the crowne of Ihesu crist & the other relyques for which I have taken grete payne: And after aske of hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf he wythesaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be drawn vylaynously, & after hange hym by the necke, his ey[en] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Roland answerd: "Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy on me! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8 neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whych sayd: "Syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Roland is your neewewe; ye knowe of what 1 valewe he is of. yf he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." "And I 12 assure you," sayd Charles, "that ye shal goo wyth hym, and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym: "& how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes? I am 16 certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and so ther shal be thre. Therry, duc of arlayne, sayd 20 lyke to thother; theryfor he was ordelyned to goo also. Ogyer the danoyes semblably sayd they ought not goo; and theryfor he was ordelyned to bere them felywshyp. Rychard of Normandy came to the emperour and 24 sayd: "Syr kyng; I am al abasshed how ye haue noo pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllingly ye wyl make them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue loste them." "by the god whome I hylene," sayd 28 charles, "ye shal goo wyth the other; and theun shal ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym: "come to me: ye are my 32 cousin, and of my next parentage; ye shal be the seuenth for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. And ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

1 e vj, back.  
2 e vj, back, col. 2.
that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys cytees, & that he deluyer to me the relyques for whome I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym, and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now wel that ye wyd lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer retorne." & thenne at euyn they went al to souper.

And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen barons aforesayd came tofore Charles. And syr Naymes said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in al places, we been here for tobyeye thy commaundement. We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In thonour of god that it be pardonned to vs." with these wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons: "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."

And so they departed on theyr wyde hastely, transport-yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

How the admyrall sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyverabras, which were recounted by the peres of fraunce, and slayn: capitulo vj

In aygremore was theane ballant theadmyral, al sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sarasyns for to haue theyr councellyl, whiche at hys commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admiral, Maradas asks
why they have been called together. (1516)

Balan tells them that they must go the next morning to Moromyonde, (1522)

and demand from Charles the surrender of Fierabras, and hommage for France. (1526)

Maradas protests, but says they will go. (1538)

They arm themselves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherfore hast thou sente for vs?" ballant answerd and sayd: "lordes, I shal say to you ye trouth. Charlemayn of fraunce requeyret of me grete folye. For he wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4 londes of hym. but thys shal not be; and he is a moche folke, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were better to hym to take hys playlsyr to slepe, & reste in his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8 chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I comccyl you that ye goo to hym to moromyonde where as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comauade hym, olde dotar, that he bylyne in mahom our god wyth-oute delaye; & abone that, for to sende and yelde to me ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons; and 16 yf he do not as ye shal denyse, I shal goo fetche hym wyth an hundred thousand men armed. And yf by aduenture ye fynde in your waye any crysten man, smyte of his heel wythout any mercy:" then thadmyral had 20 sayd, Maradas answerd: "Syr admirall, I knowe now wel that ye wyl have vs destroyed, for the froussh men ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye have purposed, he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dysmembred, but bylyne ye not that I say thys for cowardyse or for to escheuwe your commandement, but that I wyl accompllysse it. For I have suche courage, that yf by aduenture I meede wyth these crysten men, I shal 28 put to dethe ten or I be verry. And yf I do not as I have sayd, I wyl that ye do smyte of my hede." alle his felawes sayden that ech of them shold do as wel as Maradas; wherfore wythoute more deleyberacyon they wente to horse-backe, wel arme2d, & grete spere in theyr hondes, with penouns 2reysetuyssantly, and Journeyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

1 e vij, col. 2. 2 e vij. back.
passed the brydge of mantryble; & assone as they myght, they passed ouer. And the frenshe men afore named came and recounted those sarasyns. And fyrst, duc

4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes: "O lord! god of heuen, what enenterpryse hath these sarasyns made! See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete payssauence? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland

8 sayd: "my lorde, ne doubte ye noo thynge. Beholde, and see them; they be not passyng xx or xxx; late vs ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon, and ryde forth fast ayenst them. Of the partye of the sarasyns was Maradas payssaunt & wel armed, whych went and sayd to the frenske men: "how be ye so Infortunat and cursed to come and mete wyth vs, and ye be cristien?" Duke Naymes ansered: "what somenuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynously and ouer folysshly: we be men longyng to be redoubted emperour Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym: "ye be in daunger: wyl ye defende you or doo otherwise?" Naymes ansered: "we wyl defende vs by the helpe of theu our maker." maradas said: "which of you dare Inste ayenst me?" "I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas

16 sayd: "thou art moche presumptuous; For yf I had suche ten as thou art, I wold confounde them al wyth my swerde, and bex their hedes to thadmyral, wythout gretyly to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes:

20 "herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you moene, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after I shal present them to ballant thadmyral." whan rolland had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after

28 "herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you moene, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after I shal present them to ballant thadmyral." whan rolland

32 sayd to Maradas: "thou hast folyly spoken and thought thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, thou shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I deflye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

1 e vij, back, col. 2. 2 Orig. confounde.
hys hors wyth his spore sharply. And they recountede
soo harde with their spere square & sharpe, that it was
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with p's stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4
swerdes they smote the hehnes rychely wrought.
Rolland was so furyous, that he1 helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and
departe it; & after by grete force recovered hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and elefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma2 radas fyl down to therthe. Whan the
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
have borne awaye hys heed, they lokede eche on other as 12
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the
frensche men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he defended hym ouer meruayllously.
And there-upon that one partye came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frensche men ayenst the sarasyms, that alle the
paynyms were shayne, & none safed of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde when he sawe his feloues dede, and went
20 for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh
men, & neuer cessed tyll he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye hau done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of
kynge Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you, & after, they ranne
vpon vs, and haue doen theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst
vs, that al be dede sauf 1, whyche am escaped wyth
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." Whan 32
thadmyral vnder stode thys, he was almoest dede for
sorowe of the deth o' hys kynges aforesayd.

1 Orig. he he.          2 e viij.          3 e viij, col. 2
Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed' for to passe ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge:

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1619)

Naymes proposes to return, (1630)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1692)

to which they all agree.

and Ogier describes the bridge of Mantrible. (1676)

Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed’ for to passe ouer, and’ how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge:

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1619)

Naymes proposes to return, (1630)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1692)

to which they all agree.

Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed’ for to passe ouer, and’ how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge:

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1619)

Naymes proposes to return, (1630)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1692)

to which they all agree.

Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed’ for to passe ouer, and’ how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge:

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1619)

Naymes proposes to return, (1630)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1692)

to which they all agree.
The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 29 knights can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafre by name. (1790)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be measured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brede that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease, & there is a drawebyrthge 4 for to drawe vp, which desceneth byrth ten grete chaynes of yron. And above on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshamaunte and shynynge lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre, and the ryner that passeth vnder is named flagot, whyche is bynethe the arche by mesure xv foot, and remneth so Inpytously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeyse 12 may passe oner, for the grete cours of the water. And more oner this brydge is kepte byrth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryle of humayn people. And he holdeith a 16 grete axe of steele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke byrth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym. " Seygnours," sayd rolleth, "doubte ye no thynge, I praye you: care not for passyng oner the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what somener he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal Smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what somener shal happe." Dnc Naymes of banyere represyth hym: "Rolleth, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to receyue thercore fystene: late me do; For by the playsr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynes and other thynge that we shal passe byrth onte daunger." whan the frens she men came tofore the 32 brydge, the porter toke an honred knyghtes, & came & analed the lytel brydge byrth as many guysarmes & other glaynes of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

1 e viij, back, col. 2. 2 f j.
duc Naymes with his whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed oner & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym oner, & after 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes answered: "I shal say you the trouth. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath 8 quytté his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the feilde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuertheles we haue goerned them in suche nianere that here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." Anon the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of his wythe for angre, & sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde mo! ye must paye the passage of the brydge tofore al thyng." Due Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes, 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C fawcons me¹wed, an C palfroyes in good poynete & restet, & for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must hauie iiij somymers charged with golde & syluer, thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here, and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese his heede wythoute other exensa-cyon." due Naymes was not abassled, Notwithstanding

Naymes rides in front.

Galaire stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galaire demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons, 100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1748)

Naymes says that Galaire will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

¹ f j, col. 2.
gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other Jewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle playse your wyllc." ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4 said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge down, and after they passed over lightly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe, syr Due Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8 we passe thyss brydge." and rolland came behynde alle the other; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountered a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12 thynge wherof thow mayst be honoured, and alle thynge happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted down from hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threw hym hastily in to the 16 ryuer. ¶ Due Naymes loked behynde hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord god of heuen, I trowe the deuyl is in the body of Roul- land! he can haue noo pacynce in hym, and yf god 20 helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and vlaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to goure 2 hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 21 enemye where he myst fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr message: capitulo viij 28

The French knights enter into Aigremore. (1768)

The barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in 3good ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32 noblesse. And they sawe in the streetes, fawcons and

1 f j. back.  
2 Orig. guerne.  
3 f j. back, col. 2.
other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and
buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn
strangled; and they reconuerted a sarasyn whome they
demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewe[d] hym
to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe, and
thenne they algyghted, and duc Naymes say[d]: "my fayre
lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye
8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wol[d]
by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes say[d] to hym
"Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute
hauyng* attemperauence, but god do not to vs grete grace,
12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."*
And herupon they entred and presented them at tofore
the admyral wythoute any reverence. And duc Naymes
of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of
alle the world, to whom onely ou3t to be gyuen creaunce
entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng
charlemayn, puyssauHt, stronge & wyse emperour, roll-
land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and
20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes
of the feet, the Admyral *here present, as moche as
tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourage[d] be-
yonde *' bridge of mantryble. we fonde syftene glotons
on the felde, which wol[d] haue taken from vs our horses
and do to vs vylyonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,
they bought it gretely and dere." * When the Admy-
ral vnderstoode this langage, vnethe he myght kepe
28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came
the kyng* that escaped, of whome I have spoken tofore,
and say[d] to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere
syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen
32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn
your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylyonnye." The admyral Ballant ansuered: "late them be for thys
tyme:" and sythe after say[d] to Naymes the duc†, that

1 f ij. 2 Ed. duc.
be shold fynyshe his message. And the duke answered that he so do wold gladly, and sayd in thy manere:

"The grete noble kyng of Fraunce commaundeth the that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4 blessyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned wyth, and the other relyques for whom he hath taken grete tranaylle and payne; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in pryson folysshly. and yf thou do not as I haue to the 8 deuyse, Charles shal make the 1 to be hanged by the necke on a gybet and strangled vylaynously." Thadmyral ballant, replenysshed of an entencyon moche outrageous, sayd to Naymes the Duke: "Thou hast 12 gretelie defouled me by outrage, and I haue wyllyngly herde the. Goo forth and sytte down by yonde pyler, & these other shal spoken whom I haue not yet herde. Mahomet my god, to whom I haue gynen myself, 16 gyue me an euyl deth yf ever I ete or drynk tyll I see thy hede flee fro thy sholdres." The Duke Naymes answered: "yf it playse god my maker, & his blessyd moder, you shal have made a lesyng." After hym 20 spake Rychard Duke of Normandy, & sayd: "vnder-stonde me, syr admiral! Charles the kyng, with his berde floryshed, comadeth the by me, yf thon do the baptysye for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puys-saunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes, whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle p, & shal neuer haue mercy on the." Thadmyral ballant supposed to haue known hym, & sayd thus: "mahomet, in whom I bylcue, enurse the! thou ressemblest wel Rychard of 32 normandye, whych swee my 2 vnele corsuble. Now wold Mahom the god that he were here! he shold neuer ete mete tyll he were dede. Goo and sytte down

1 f ij, col. 2. 2 f ij, back.
by thy felowe, vnto I have herde thy felowes." After thy thens came basyn the geneuwy, & stode before ballant and say’d: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles, 4 abone al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche have been requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle the as a theef proved." when he had say’d thus, he went 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyere & countenaunce of manere, whan thadmyral sawe that he had the regarde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed 12 that he had ben a deuyl. And after, thyerry say’d: "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes. Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answer’d: "vas-sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe is he, of the whiche I have herde moche preysed & vaunted?" Thenne the duc Thyerry answered: "I telle 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble & hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that ye he he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the thau of an olde houzde deede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, & after say’d to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth. ye he were now in thy wyle and subyectyon, as thou arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth me?" "by my fayth," say’d Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

1 fj. back, col. 2.
OGIER AND ROLAND REPEAT CHARLES’S MESSAGE. [II. ii. 8.

I shold doo hange the by the necke, and strangle the vyhaysly on a gybet or it were yet nyght.” ¶ “Vassal,” sayde the Admyrall, “thou hast sayde grete folye. For by Mahommet my god, in lyke wyse shal 1 doo of thee, as thou hast sayde of thy self. Goe thou and sytte by thy felyawes.” ¶ Thenne after hym came the good Ogier the danoyes tofore hym, and sayd: “O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstondde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche wythoute com-

parison, demaundeth of the. Rendre and yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or elles he shal do dysmembre the, and doo the deye shamefully.” 12 Thadmyral, beynge al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth anri after him the other. After hym, rolland the courageous came to-

fore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doyng to hym onj reverence, and sayd to hym: “Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng and Emperour redoubted, sendeth to the, that thou bylyeue in god lhesu cryst, the maker of al the world, & in the gloryous vyrgyn marie his moder; and 20 do the to be baptysed, and thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyst and atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred and delyned hole and in good poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I hame sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged as a theef.” Thadmyral sayd to hym: “thou hast rebuke6 and blamed me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahom, my god, & by Term.

28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyll thou be hanged & strangled.” Thenne Rouland answerd: “for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thon holdest faste over longe. Thou shalt not do so. 2 FOR I doubte the 32 not the value of an olde dede hounde & drowned.” ¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and sayd to hym in thys manere: “Charles

1 f iij. 2 f iij, col. 2.
commandeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons; and thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man: and yf thou wylt byleue me, I wyl wel councelyl the. Byleue in god Thesu Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute ende and wythoute begynnynge. And yf thou byleuest my councelyl, thou mayst be in his grace. And lo! what thou shalt do: take of thy robe, thy hosen, and thy shoon of thy body, and goo in thy sherte, and here on thy body a saddel of an hors, and reste not tyll thou come before the face of Charles, and blyme presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to god thy maker almyghty, for thyn eiTours and outrages.

And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty; and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully to dye."

The Admyrall was more determyned and araged than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the other that were of hys councelyl, and demaunded theyr aduys and councelyl vpon these thynges aforesayd. Anone sortybrant sayd to hym: "Syr admyral, I councelyle you that anone they be dysmembred and slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is pensyf: yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth. After ye shal descend in to fraunce, & doo you be crowned there as kyng." "by mahoun," sayd ballant, "ye haue wel sayd. Now be it done after your deuyse: goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr felowes, for to do after the enterpryse." And thus as I haue sayd, Thadmyral was of enteneyon to make of the frensche men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

How by the moyen of florypes al the frensche men were saued', and' lodged' to.

1 Orig. shamefulluy. 2 if ij, back.
Floripas the curtyous, after that she had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyn chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there a'parte?" Thadmyral answerd: "my daughter, they be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8 wordes of gret Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought to do wyth them?" The daughter sayd: "I shal say 12 to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do smyte of theyr heedles, for they haue wel deserued it. And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre without your cyte." "my daughter," sayd the admyral, 16 "ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon. Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other." "good fader," answerd the daughter, "it is tyme to dyne, and yf ye wyl begyne to doInstyce, ye may not ete 20 tyl mydday be passed." This daughter sought none other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to the wylle of hyn fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysoners. 24 ¶ And after sayd to hyn fader: "gyue to me these Frensse men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte; and after your dyner ye shall do Instyce wyth lasse tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28 ¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was contente thyt hys doughter shold haue them in kepyng. Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32 Admyral, it is noo thynge couenable that vpon thys fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

1 f iiij, back, col. 2.
2 f iiiij.
mutablyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensamples, and also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was Floripes of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray-tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne me to ouermoche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a buffet on thy yvsage, that the blode shold auale doun 8 habandauntly:" And aftyer these wordes thadmyral was euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon slie took she conducts the French knights to the fyngshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-her chamber. "^2021 She conducts the French knights to her chamber. (2021)

"^2021 Naymes is struck with the beauty of Floripes.

Floripas in a rage threatens Sortybrant. (2916)

"Alas, Olyuer, my 28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer, and eche demaunded of other of theuyr feates, of the contreyes, and of theuyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thinke that 32 they were gladde eche of other that they were al togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to cryspond, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dysercscyon the

1 f iiiij, col. 2.
captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynyms, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

"But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente to a thynge, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no garedre to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achiyene hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Floripas retched of noo thynge but that she myt hauve tedynges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the lone of hym. Thys sayr Floripas, whan she sawe these barons to-gyдре, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accordé promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and enduoyre you." "Ryght gladly," ansered due Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuyng:" she was contente, & they were contente, and promyse fydelyte that one to the other. when this was doon, the doughter came to due naymes for to knowe what 24 he was, and demaunde of hym hys name. the due sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and concyeyllour to Charles the Emperour re-doubted." "Alas!" sayd the doughter, "your kyng is 28 sory for you." After she came to Rychard and de-maunde of hym how he was named. he ansered to hyr: "dame, 2I am Rychard of Normandye," the doughter sayd to hym: "Machomet curse the! thou puttest to 32 deth on a tymé corsable myn vnclle. But for the lone of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Floripas came after to rolland, and prayed that he wolde telle hys

1 f iiiij. back.  
2 f iiiij, back, col. 2.
name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to duc Myllen, & am neneue to charles, sone of hys syster." Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneed down 4 to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After, the doughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye hanc promysed to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouth that I lone a knyght of framne abone al them of the 8 world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyn, of whom I wold gladely hauc tydynges," rolland sayd: "I swore to you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that there is not bytwene you twyene the space of foure foot 12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym is alle my playsyr." Rolland answerd and sayd: "syr guye of Bourgoyn, come ye hyther to thys mayde and 16 recyue hyr joyously." Guy of bourgoyn answerd: "god forbode that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she were gyuen to me by Charles thempour." ¶ Whan Floripes vnderstode hym, anone she changed colour, 20 and swere [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed it she shold make them alle to be hange in the necke on a gybette. Rolland enhorted Guye that he shold do hyr wylle, and upon that he aduaunced hym, & hath 24 graunted. Theonne Floripes sayd: "the sone of god of crystyante be preysed and honoure, For I hauo tofore myn euen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn hert desyre. For his lone I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst, 28 & shal do me be baptysed: " & after, she approched to hym for to treate a lytel the desire of hir hert, and she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys cheekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Theonne 32 Floripes joyously and by grete lone came vnto a cheste and opened it tofore the barons, and spreede a fayr cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the replques of whyche I hauo spoken tofore, emounge 1 f v.

Roland tells her, (2061)
Floripes tells the knights how she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (2072)
Roland calls on Guy to come forward and accept her as his wife (2095), but Guy refuses, (2096).
Floripes swears that if he does not she will have them all hanged, (2092).
Guy gives way, (2101).
Floripes kisses him, (2112)
which the French knights devoutly kiss. (2132)

Lucifer enquires of Balan if it is true that Fierabras is a prisoner. (2117)

Balan says it is. (2152)

but that he has twelve French knights prisoners, in charge of Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is wrong to trust them to a woman. (2166)

whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu cryste was crowned with in the tyme of his passyon, and the holy naylles whyche percei hys holy handes and feete: and after sayd to Rollam: "Loo! here is the tresour that ye haue so moche desyre." When the frencshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For love they alle wepte moche tenderly, and one after the other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8 & after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they had ben tofore.

How Lucafer neew of the admynral vyolently entred in to the chambre, & after 12 was slayn of duc Naymes in blowynge of the cool: capitulo x

Allan thadmyral beynge moche wroth & syttyng at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a speycyal 16 freme of thadmryal, named lucafer of bandas, sayd to thadmryal affectuously: ¶ ¶ "Syr admynral, is it trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your son and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20 whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?" Thadmryal said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not hyde it fro you. A freme men hath conquer'd hym —whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24 made grete defence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare them soo wel that they brought to vs fuye of the gloutes of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whiche ben in pryson, and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28 ben comen as messagers fro the sayd charles, which haue vytpere and blame vs gretylye in reprochynge our lawe & despyysynge my goddes. Florypes my daughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32 sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

1 f v, col. 2. 2 f v, back.
lytel thynge ben chaunged, and torned fro theyr thought, neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by your commaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe what they be, and of what comyngion.” “Goo forth,” said thadmyral, “ye say ryght wel, and make my daughter to retorne wyth you.” hereupon lucafer, moche proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to the chambre where the doußter was and the frensh she men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongely wyth hys fote that the barres & lockes flewe vnto the grounde. Whan Flcrypes saw that she was al abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: “Syr noble knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husband ageyn my wylle. I rekyre you in as moche as ye wyl do me playesyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour, For I complayne me wythoute makyng ouermoche euyl semblaunte.” to whome Rolland answered: “doubte ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal knowe that he hath cuyll doon. And I promise you that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he shal for the brekyng of herof.” Hereupon Lucafer entred in to the chambre, and behelde the frenshe men al armed wythoute ony doubte that he had to them. And came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscovered and bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that almoost he had ouerthrown hym, & after sayd to hym: “of whens art thou, veylant? hyde it not fro me.” The duke Naymes answerd: “payynym, I am of bauyere, and that is my contree, and am speceyal counceyllour of Charlemyne, And al these barons that ben here been al crles and grete lorde, and ben come for to shewe to ballaunt the admiral a message fro the sayd charles, and that he will go see if they are safe. (2168)

He goes to Floripas’ chamber, and bursts open the door with his foot. (2180)

Floripas calls on Roland to avenge this insult. (2186)

Roland promises to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters, (2197)

and first seing Naymes by the beard, (2294)

demands his name, (2297) which Naymes tells him, (2298)

and that he will go see if they are safe. (2168)

Lucifer enters, (2197)
Lucifer shows Naymes how to play "at the coal." [ii. ii. 10.

and asks him to let him go. (2211)

Lucifer asks him to describe the French and their games. (2216)

Naymes says some hunt, (2221)

some play chess or tables, (2224)

and that they are all brave and hard to conquer.

Lucifer asks him if he knows the game of the "grete cole?" (2230)

Naymes says, "No."

Lucifer takes a coal and shows him how to blow it, (2236)

redoubted? Emperor; & by cause that we hane not spoken to his entencion he hath made vs prysoonners. Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye hane holde me longe ynoough; And be ye sure that I say not 4 al that I thynke." ¶ The payynym answere: "I am contente thy folye be pardonne? the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyaltie, what maner folke ben they of fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8 they whan they been in your royame?" "In trouthe," sayd the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyste. Somme ryde oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the feldes and 12 syngle, other make good? chere at tables, at the chesse, & other playesante games, and in the morny every man gooth gladyly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to p* 16 poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardly, and been not lyghtlly vanquyssshed. Suche been the peple in the contruye of crystente." Lucafer began to lawhe and 20 sayd: "by my god? Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotarde that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no thynge so of your feate, he fresshe men be of no valore but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24 trouthe," said the duc, "I herde neuer theroif." the Payynym answere: "I shal teche you the manere," and he approched to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goynge? Rolland? made sygne to the duc that he 28 shold? her hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, Andr blewe so sharply that the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after 2 said to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took 32 the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the payynym wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewe the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

1 f vj. 2 f vj, col. 2.
II. ii. 10.] NAYMES BURNS LUCIFER'S BEARD, AND AFTER KILLS HIM. 119

to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes

4 wyth that smote hym wyth the broude in the necke that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so grete myght that his cyen flewe oute of hys heed to the grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou arte, Whome I byseche god confounde, thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lyce there wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth, syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd be that arme that gaf that stroke!" "Lorde," sayd duc Naymes, "ye haue made hym to vnderstande hys folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he trufTed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his ease; I see wel that he remeneth not. And I wote now that he never shal haue grete desyre to espouse me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader had gyuen me to hym, but never wold I haue suffred it, but rather haue myn heede Smyton of, or suffred vylayn-

20 ous deth."

1. How, by the councelyl of floripes, the freenshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-

28 ment a gyrdle was taken away fro the dou3ter: ca.

F lorypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth thadmyral, and sayd to the freenshe men: "Lordes, knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

32 floripes reminds them that Lucifer

1 f vj, back.
was Balan's
greatest friend,
and would surely
be missed,

and advises them
to arm them-
selves, (2270)

and suddenly
attack the Sar-
cens. (2275)

They arm, and
start out two and
two at night fall. (2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-
suble, (2289)
and Oliver Cold-
ros. (2291)

The Saracens fly.
(2290)
Some jump out of
the windows. (2290)

man than ony man lyuyng, he abydethe for hym to
come to dyner, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be
returned, and yf by adventure he knowe what is doo
ye shal be here encommred and assayled, and al the 4
golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal
be dede. Wherfore I concayl you that ye doo arme
you and put you in poynte. take ly3tly your helmes and
your sholdes, For people that been armed be moche re-
doubted of other vnarmed, therfore I wyll not that ye
be closed ne shetted herin, Whan ye come in the paleys
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue
you soo that ye be maysters and lorde of the place, 12
and theonne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dought-
ter had thus sayed, they were ryght wel contente, &
prestly arme them, and gyde their swardes aboute
them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16
goone corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,
in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute
at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20
nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye
was rollande, and the other followed hym ryght fryersly for
to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowe that eche
man shold do hys parte, & slee the paynyms and sar-
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not.
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth
the Kyng Cofdroe. Ther was not one but that they
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28
appointed anone was thorned vp so down & caste to the
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and
sowned in the place; Saraysyn goon to therthe slayn and
dysmembrede: Other lepe out of the wyndowes, whyche 32
after were founden dede; Other were all to-hewen,
sholdes & legges smytyn of. Thadmyral, all arage, put
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

\[1\] f vij. back, col. 2.
\[2\] f vij.
II. ii. 11.] BALAN SWEARS VENGEANCE ON THE FRENCH KNIGHTS. 121

to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marbl e stone of the wyndowe in suche wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admiral is escaped fro you." "Cer- teyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente." Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle but have no food.

12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawen hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, bylue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyral answen?: "I praye you 12355; the sige be layed tofore the toure. And I shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come, Ne for thynge that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawen at the taylles of my horses;
And after I shal make floruples the putayn to be brente in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde them, For they be not vptylled scars for foure dayes. And ot of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde the stronge brydge of mantrayle, & they may haue noo socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other parte, charles shal 1 haue noo tydylges of his barons ne 8 shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in lybertye or in subjiciytion." & here upon they concluded & went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the morn e rly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12 concluded to laye the sycge, and sware to holde it senen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle. Thenne come there so many paynyms in the contreye aboute that theyr lodgyses holde foure myle of space. 16 ye may thynk in what daunger the frensche men were, whyche were but twelxe persones onely, and had none other conduyte ne conforte but to be wythin assyeger in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20 as the sarasyns dyd grete lyly theyr denvyr for to entre, yet they coude no thynge gryene them. Thadmyral called one marpy, a moche fals theef emong alle humayn creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpy, by the berde that 24 I here on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal warrede and gyne to the largelie of my golde & sylvr, & thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28 it, I am sure that the frensche men shal sone be dede for hungre, and thenne may they nomore gryne me." 32 That gyrdle was of suche vertu that 2as longe as it shold have dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold neuer haue be famyne. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to mornre, or the somne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

1 f vij, back. 2 f vij, back, col. 2.
At night he crosses the moat, 2405, climbs into the tower, 2406, and comes to Floripas' chamber, 2408.

He sends the French knights to sleep by enchantment, 2411.

He attempts to ravish Floripas, 2412, who cries for help, 2451.

Guy hears her cries, 2411, runs to her chamber, 2442.

Guy with his sword, 2414.

He throws his body into the sea, and the girdle is lost, 2464.
the losse of the gyrdle may never be recouuered. Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

How the barons were assyeged in the toure wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which suffered grete hungre, and how the god-des by them were confounded: capitulo xij

W

hen the day was comen, and thadmryral sawe not 8 Marpyn thechaumtourt retourne, he was moche abassshed, and demaunded brillant, Sortybrant, and hys other lordez, councely what he shold doo, consydered that Marpyn was not returned. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12 admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is dead, sylly he is not returned and comen; but I councely you that ye doo some your trompettes for tassemble your subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16 crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes they doo caste stones & dartzes ennymed, but—blessyd be god!—the frensche men doubted them no thynge. After they had contynued the syege a Avlnde, brede and 20 wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in suche wyse that they had noo thynge to ete. Thenne the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre & ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24 And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche dysplaysaunte for the necessyte of the frensche men, of hyr self, and of hyr damoyselles, often tymes she swwoned & fyl to grounde as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28 hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr yp moche swetely, and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys felawes: "My brethren & lordez, ye see the necessyte that we suffre; it is now thrue dayes passed syth we had 32 ony brede. And yet it greteth me more for these.

1 f viij, col. 2. 2 f viij, back.
damoyelles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe that I may no longer endure but yf we do otherwyse. And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold abyde here within enclosed wyth thys melancolye.

Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power, whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne conforte; And I say you wel, that yf ye haue adoured our goddes, they had pouerned for you mete and drynke." Tofore that she had synysshed hyr wordes, Roulland answerd and sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs your goddes that ye speke of. And yf ye haue the power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and drynke, & that they do soo moche that the 1pynyssance of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al blyene on them wythout varyeng." The mayde sayd: "Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the erthe, and shewe to them the goddes of the sarasyns, whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.

And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun, and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Lupyn, and many other, whiche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye, enorne wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and encence; and many other tresours were there assembled. Guy of bourgoynye sayd, whan he sawe soo grete tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled? Wold god that Rychard of normandye had now Lupyn in hys eyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplyshe wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyte. And that

1 f viij, back, col. 2.
kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn p. chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette them in good poynte."

Floripys answere and sayd: 4

"Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye them mercy & adoure them, 1 to thende that they enclyne them to you to doo you conforte."

Guy sayd vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And Ogyer danoyys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe, and were anone alle to-broken. Wherfore Rouland 12 sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been fallen to therthe I see not one of them remene, ne make semblante to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Floripys 16 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and bylencd in Ihesu Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Rouland, that ye say the veray trouthe; but yf euere I blyence on them, I wyl that my body come to an enyl ende. and with good 20 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn, of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you socours of franne, and that we fynde maner to gete vtaille for to satysfyre our hynGRE."

How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which they recouercd twenty sommys charged of vtaylle: capitulo xiii 28

She faints with hunger. 2584

W.Han Florypys had sayd, she fyl down to the erth a-swonne for sorowe & anguyssh. Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche sorrowfully for the lone of hyr. II[c]eupon Olyuer the 32 courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes,

1 g. j. 2 g. j. col. 2.
I you assure, by the god! that suffered death for creatureshuman, I had rather my body were quartered and smytton in peeces than I should suffer this pryson, but
4 that I should fyght quyckely wyth the payynyms;” & semblably sayd Rolland. Wherfore, wythout other
delyberacion, they sette theyr shieldes in good poynete, and mounted on horsback, and analed the brydge, &
8 wyth a stefast courage made them redy. & when they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the
other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogyer, it byhouth that one of you abyde for to kepe the place, that at the
12 retornyng we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes conde take noo pacyence, but that he answered thus:
“Syr Rolland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I should be reproched,
16 and that euer I should be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of synewes, and haue myn herte wel assure, & wyl be hardy ynowh for to smyte
20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubte ye no thyenge therof.” Roland answerd: “syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or gefrroy, that one of you two shal abyde.” but it was not their play. syr
24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rol-
land, thyerry abode with gefrroy, whycbe shetted? the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whycbe, eche with his shilde tofore hym and swerde in
28 hys hande, wente mustrying them tofore the castell.
Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frens-he
men, Wherfor hastely he sente for brillant and? Sorty-
brant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd:
32 “my barons and subgettes, the frens-he men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yt they be not al slayn,
i shal be euyl contente. Wherfore do sowne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe.”

1 orig. yon. 2 g j. back.
And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assayled the frenshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. ¹For vnunhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neneue to the admiral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland esceryd gherard, Ogyer & Guy: "O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his denoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vctorye, we may obtayne vntyllle for the maydens in the toure." That sayd, Rolland smote his hars wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he erlede hede and body at a stroke; wherof they put were there present were abasshed, & thence the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: "My brethern & lorde, Who wyll here-after haue playstyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, ²for often by one vnunhappy man a valyant man is in daunger." Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more fernen than they had be, to thende that every man shewed hym self suche as he oust to be, & after that ³batayll was fynysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by 4the tour aforesayld a grete auncerue, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vtyayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vtyaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Inconvenience the lederes of the sarasyns and of theyr vtyayl

¹ g. j. back, col. 2. ² g. ij.
were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes & Wylyam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth. And Rolland & the other came & anoyded the place, in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete payne.

**How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the sarasyss, beten vylaynoysly, and’ demaunded’ of thadmyral, and the complayntes that Florypces made for hym, & other maters:**

**capitulo xiiiij**

12 AS I have sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the sommyers afore sayd; there came so grete habundaunce of men of armes of the partye of kyng Claryon, that it was mercuylle. There was thecune an harde and stronge recountre, in so moche that due basyn was slayn, & Aulbery hys sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye, Incontyne it he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn and abode. And yet thys was not the moost harm, For the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of kyng Claryon, he announce hym for to smyte hym. that came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn vnder hym of the paynyms, & sodeynly he was enuyrond of moo than an honyled knyghtes sarasyss, whych took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, & after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and ledde hym forth, hys handes bouaden behynde hym at his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he began to crye wyth an hye voys: "O Thesus, veray god, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now, that am euyl fortune?? O Thesus, comforte me! O noble Charlemyne, ryght noble emperour, and myn g ij, vol. 2.
vncele, thou shalt never see me!" The kyng claryon sayd to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyng shal anayle the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng. I shal delayuer the al lyuynge to the admiral of spayn thys day, And to-morne thou shalt be hanged." But now ye may wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys felowes, were enyal contente when they sawe the Erle Guye soo prysoner. || Neuertheles they dyd grete 8 feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates barred, everyche went to dyner: and theame floripes cam anon to rolland, & said to hym: "syr rolland, I 12 reuyere you that ye say to me where is syr guye of bourgoyne my husband become. I wote wel, whan ye departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thether. Ye ought to bryngy hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16 foyous at the hert tyll I knowe where he is." Rolland answere: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye no more, for certes ye haue lost hym, ye shal neuer see hym; the paynyns haue ledde hym maungre vs, & we 20 knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." floripes hear yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland, whych wepte for hyr, oft relene hyr: & when she was 24 ryseen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen & erthe, yf I haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whom I ought to be maryed, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28 passed. O holy vyrwyn marylge! I shold be espoused to hym, and for lorne of hym be baptysed and be crysten. Alas! our lones haue some faylled. This sorowe hath made me wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had these iiij dayes. Alas! I am unhappy." Rolland myght not see the melancolye of thys Floripes, but promyse hyr to make hyr glad wythin ij dayes, for

1 g ij, back.  2 g ij, back, col. 2.
II. ii. 14.] Guy is led before Balan and examined by him. 131

themue atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr
physysyr, and that she shold no thyng dubyte thereof;
for knowe ye surely," sayd rolland, "I had leuer to
be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal
be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore avenged, &,
madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may
not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre
8 dayes passed syth we ete, we haue purchased vytayl for
vs & these damoyselles, of whom ye see the pyte, late
vs take pacynce of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente
to entretiene the lyf:"
for ye ouyt to knowe that they
12 myght not recourre the sommyers with vytaylle,
by cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyn, whyche
was deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,
the barons and the damoyselles thanked god of al,
and advises her to
take some of the food which they
had won. (2-12)

Meanwhile Guy
is led before
Balan, (2-20)

and feede them suffysantlye, in praysyme and lawdyng
god deuoutelye.

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,
whiche was ledde tofore the admiral. moche troubled,
20 dyscolourd, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye
by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for be
daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his
enemies. & there tofore the admiral he was al des-
24 poyled of his armes; & theame appyered his body wel
membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &
who he was. the baron ansuerd: "Admiral, I fere not
to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-
28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to
rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel
to be doubted." ballaert ansuerd: "I knowe the wel
ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my
32 douxter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me
gretely: & I know wel that she loueth the more than
ony man luyuyng; & I for that loue hane lost many men
of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyfel
132 GUY KILLS A SARACEN WHO HAD STRUCK HIM IN THE FACE. [II.ii. 14.

strength of all my contreye, but ye al be yolden to me ageyn shortly. you shall be quarterd in short tyme, & dysmembred, & more-ouer I demaunde put thou say to me the truthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4 tour, of whom we hane ben assayled with so daungerously." Guy answerd: “gladly I shal say to the. Be thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there, Olyuer, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, due of S Ardayne, Rychard of Normandye, Gherard 1 of Mundydyer, Naymes due of banyere, & basyn the genewey, whom ye hane slayn ; but, by the grace of god & helpe of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde.” Thad-12

Myral was ry3t euyl contente of the menaces of Guye; Wherefore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and smote guye on the vsage in suche wyse that the blood yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly, wyth 16 that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour, and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20 smote hym vpon the grete bone of p necke behynde, that he brake it, And, wythoute moenyng of hande or foot, he fyl downd deed to the grounde tofore the admiral. ¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24 he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for the myspyrsynge that guy had doon in hys presence tofore his eyen, and eryed with a loude voys that he shold be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sarasyns as wolues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admiral had not commanded theym that he shold not be put to 32 deth in suche manere.

---

1 g iiij. col. 2.  2 g iiij. back.
A gallows is prepared for Guy, and an ambush set.

After that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brillant of mommyere, Sortybrant of conyumbres, and for many other of his councelyl, and sayd to them: "my frendes, I praye you that ye gyue to me councelyl what I ought to do wyth thyys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete reproche & despyysynge, as ye see and knowe." "Syr," Sortybrant advises him to have Guy hanged, in front of the castle, and to set an ambush for the French if they should try to rescue him. This advice is approved.

Balan calls a council.

Sortybrant advises guye of bourgoyn to be hanged, and to see that ye have in a secrete place, nyghe unto said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in good poynte: and I am sure that the frey[s]she men be so hardy and oute of mesure, that, when they shall see their felowe for to be hanged, they shall come oute for to socoure hym; & your peple that shal be hydde in the busshement shal come out on them & take them. Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your playsyr." this councelyl was approved by thadmyral to be good, & was therwyth wel content; wherfore, wythoute takyng of any other delyberacyon, the galowes were made as afore is sayd; & ryght nyghe to the place was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the kyng claryon & other captyays. & after, thadmyral made guye of bourgoyn to be ledde with xxx sarasyneys unto the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on hym with grete stanes, whyche greued hym sore: & they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche
strayly, & when he felt a great cord about his neck, and his eyes bound, & saw no thyng whyther he went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voy he began to crye: "O redempflour of the world, my maker and my 4 god, for whos name I am in payne, and go to deye an eyd deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in to thy kepyng; for the body taketh his ende! And lyke as I have nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre thee to counceyll and confort me. ¶ O noble barons of fauncye, ye shall neuer see me: ye 1 ye suffer me to be hanged, it shall be to you grete shame. O Roulland, fayr cosyn, remembre me! or elys shall ye neuer see me on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes, Roland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytcl roche, and saw the galowes reyseyd. Wherfore he came to his felawys and sayd: "I meryaylle moche what 16 thys meneth, that I have seen the galowes sette vpon the dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon."

When the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them, that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20 guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they knewe wel that ye he were not socoure & rescued, that he shold be hanged & put to deth. When the 24 fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes reyseyd, and guy, his lone and tocomyng husband, so shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28 was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes, shal ye suffer guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that ye he deye, by the same god that fourne the I shal lepe out of the 32 wyndowe, & shal deye in despcrayon." and after she came to Rolland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and kyssed his feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Rolland, in
thonour of god! I requyre the that it may playse the to take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye, and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme 4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the tyme is ouer short; so that by the playseyr of god ye shall be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes armed? them moche hastely, and gyrd theyr swerdes 8 and sheldes, and? wente oute of the toure, and on hors backe sprange oute. And? or they rode ony further, rolland? sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyth our deth & our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-12 duyte & loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may, 16 For yf we be deuyde?, we shal sone be taken and hanged. And? on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde, that prestly he be reysed? And? not to leue hym for lyf ne deth, And? that none faylle other. And? I shal be he 20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I swere 2 to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde durandal, and? may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in lyke wyse sayd? al the other. Florypes answerd?: "my lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr chambre, and? opened a coffe, in whiche was the crowne of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it 28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good courage they yssued out, noo thyngye dredlyng? the payys-saunce of the paynysms. & after, Florypes and hyr damoysellys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure. 32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, sayr and in good orden-aunce, wente toward? the galowes alounge the medowes, & the paynysms were vnder the galowes, and? were besy to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

1 orig. loyal. 2 g iiiij, back.
Guy is on the point of being hanged, (2572)

but Roland puts the Saracens to flight, (2976)

and kills 26 of them,

The ambush breaks out. (2289)

Roland charges Cornyfer, (2996)

and slays him, (2008)

and then rides to the galowes, (2010)

unbinds Guy,

who takes the arms and horse of a Saracen, (3052)

The French are hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes al-o, and a grete corde aboute hys necke, and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynysms sayeng: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4 thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thynge wherof ye shal repente." Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetuously, the most hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastely pourseyewed that xx 8 of them 1 were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makyng a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruaylous paynym, vpon a morel of grete faicyon, And began to crye: "ha! ye frensshe 12 men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is %aged by thalmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterpryset a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan rolland bende the paynym so say, he was moche 16 angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his shicle daungerously; but after that he was recouere, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20 puysantly that he eelte hys heed down to the body, and after that he was dede, rolland came remnyng vnto the galowes, and ublynsfeldhe & vnbonde syr guye of bourgeyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyly he was 24 armed, & after that Rouland had slayn another paynym, Guye, byeng in thassurance of thatother peres of fraunce, he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynysms 28 hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and meruaylous defence that they made, for anone al the sarayns that were in the wode came vpon the ba2rons of fraunce, and dyd grete Incomenents. Neuertheles, by 32 thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement & of so entyuer courage, of so meruaylous defence and puysaunce, that at that tyne they put soo many sarayns

1 g iiiij, back, col. 2 2 g v.
to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were empeshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of bourgoyle dyd mercaylles: for after that he was armed by the conservacyon of hys felowes, he dyd gretely hys denouyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys tourney that I am escaped fro your handes." & by thus fyght-
yng they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete bowe draught. They thus fyghtynge, on that other syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to empesshe them the passage, that they myst not wyth-
drawe them. Wherfore Rolland, holding dunandal in hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd to them: "lорdes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs, but of necesyte we must auance vs for our owne con-
eracyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no thynge; & thenne may we wel same vs." "Roulland;" Sayd Guye of bourgoyle, "Ye knowe wel that in the toure we haue noo thynge to ete, & yf we were wythin,
how shold we lyue? yet had I leer to haue my body daungerously wounded in fyghtynge upon the sarasyns, than to dye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day we shold dye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take it a worth, as good and trewe knygntes of god." Al the other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete purpoos for to bere them valyautntly. They beyng in thys purpoos to bere them valyautntly, as sayd is, Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye of bourgoyle hyr lone, wherof she was moche Ioyous, and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold plese hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadnyral shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the danoyes sayd: "Lорdes, haue ye not herde how nobly

1 g v, col. 2.
The French make a charge, and scatter the Saracens as sparrows before the hawk. (3101)

Guy slays Rampire.

Roland praises his valour. (3109)

FLORIPAS REMINDS THE KNIGHTS THAT THEY HAVE NO PROVISIONS.

She spoketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne.” Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frenshe men ronen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made so grete bruyt and desconfortyme of payynms, that they eschewed & made them to flee tofore him as 1 the byrde tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attayned hym so harde on the somette of the heele, that he cleft hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherfore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12 hym: “Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced 1 the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to love you and holde you ryght dere.”

How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd’ were 16 pourneyed’ of vytyaylles, and’ after assyeged’ and’ foughten by the paynyms: ca. xvj

When Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr damoyselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem hyely: “O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytyaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for famyne. Olyner vnderstode wel the 24 damoysel, and also roulland, whyche sayd 1 that she had wel spoken, and in tyme: “for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease,” and therupon al the barons with one 2 couraige goon ageynst the 28 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche wyse bat they made them to voyde the place, & to wythdrawe and goo backe a grete dele, and thus as they returned unto the toure, a ryght good adventure came 32 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which corteyn payynms ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

1 g v, back. 2 g v, back, col. 2.
wyne, brede, and flesh habundantly. And anon they that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, and thenne the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the toure, & in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day before, which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the 8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the brydge, and entred, and after analed the drawe brydge, and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were they wel vytyayled for ij monethes & more. ye may 12 wel wete that theadmyral was not ouer Joyous when he sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his subgenetyon was wyth his felawes, And also when he knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytyalle so habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente byd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brillant of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other of hys counceylours, sayeng to them: "My barons, ye 20 knowe that these frenshe men haue ryght euyl gouerned vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn, and other vytyailles : and yf by adventure it come to the knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for 24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make to hym contynual resistence, For hys puyssauence is ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete thought and melancholy what we may best doo."

To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd: "syr admiral, I counceyl that every man be armed, and in grete paynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a 32 thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And when the Frensch men shal here them, they shal be so aferde that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure." Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd:

1 g vs
"Sortybrant, frende! ye speke of a grete folye. Bylune not be the frenssh men that be within the toure ben of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde wyth blowynge & sowynge of hornes.  

Certeyn ye haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is there wythin: the moost puysaunt & the moost noble Rolland is there, whych is so puysaunt and courageous & that who-someuer Joyneth to hym, he putteth hym to deth; And there is the counte olyuer: knowe ye not of his grete fyersnes, whych conquerd Kynge Feyerabras, the myghtyest of all the paynyms? And I swere to you by Mahoun that he is in theyr compaynye. For I haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-dyer, Ghereard, whych hath doon to vs grete dommage. Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another fals olde olde knyght that named hym self Naymes, duc of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whych was taken from vs when he was ledde to be hanged. And other ther be whych he haue not named. There ben 20 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland, the 2neuewe of charles, is of soo grete fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng, ne stroke ne 24 shotte that is gyuen hym: and doubt ye not, that, ye they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they shold chace vs oute of thys royame or they 3shold slee vs. And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28 he hath ryght wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accused and unhappy, For it is longe sythe that theye have ony thynge holpen vs."  

Of these wordes that brullant thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng angry, & sayd to 32 hym: "ye haue ryght enyl and folysshly spoken." and so sayeng, he wold haue smyton hym wyth hys staf, but the kynge Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng:

1 g vj. col. 2,  
2 orig. nenuewe.  
3 g vj. back.
II. ii. 17.] The Saracens Make a Fierce Assault on the Castle. 141

"Syr admiral, lene your angre, and late vs thynke for to assayle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals frenssh men be vaynquyssed & Smyton in pyces."

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes, trumpettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to make bruyt & noysse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns were there assembled, that they helde p space of a myle.

8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named Mahon, that made two mernayllous engynes, & with couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,

12 that they myght not be hurte of the frenssh men.

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the fyrst wardes of the castel, wherfore the frenssh men, fyrvous and wode as Lyons, came to the yates of the toure, & the maydens also al armed, whyche with the barons dyd so wel theyr denoyr, that he that was raft and Smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he over-threw and fyl down dede. For they were aboue on hye, and threw down grete stones, dartes of yron, & other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made contynuel resystence.

How the toure was broken and breste by enchauntament, & the barons in grete peryl of deth, and restored by assaullte maad' on the Paynyms: capitulò xvij

The Paynyms perseueryng in thassault afore sayd, 'The engineer says he has his engines ready. (3259)

28 Thenchauntour came toefore the admiral, and sayd to hym: "Ry3t dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the frenssh men: make your men of armes to goo a parte, & that I may haue somme to awayte on me." And when they were alle redy as he had denysed, he sette them rounde aboute the toure. And by lys crafte and

1 g vj, back, col. 2.
He sets the walls of the castle on fire. (3290)

The French are in despair. (3284)

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne & make fyre at vterrauace, wherfore the frensshe men were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no moyen to saue their persons. Wyth thys, floripes sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet unto the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8 somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre artystycally brente the stones. thus she made this beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brente12 nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to have beene out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his daughter; wherfore thadmyral was of enteneyon to 16 make hys daughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his homes and trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al neue, and at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn-20 quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they have nomore to caste oure vpon vs. For they have nomore shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And thassaulte was made as it was ordyned Impetuous, that 24 it sened derke for the shotte of aroweys, of darters, stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the grete quarters of the murayl & walles fyld and tombled down to the erthe, the barons of fraunce moche abasshed, sayd 28 one to another, that themne they must medes be vayn- quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in grete thougt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32 dysmaye ye noo thyngye! thys toure is stronge ynoough for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

1 g vij. 2 g vij, col. 2.
plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetche it, And
as wel may we slee the paynymys therwyth, as wyth
stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, yr lour,
came to hyr wyth grete loye, & kyssed hyr moche amery-
ously and swet-lye. And after she wente & opened
the toure and place where the tresour\(^1\) was Innumer-
able, and wyth grete quantyte thereof they wente to the
8 batylments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynymys,
in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture.
And more ouer the paynems, seeing* the golde falle on
and the Saracens
leave off the ass-
sault and fight
amongst them-
selves for the
gold. (3319)

12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concu-
pyscence of that golde they taught and slewe eche other.
Wherfore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &
\(^2\)angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye
16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyms, leue ye
thassaulte, whiche torenth to me grete dommage Innu-
merable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste,
which I haue wyth grete payne & dylygence assembled,
20 And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had
made hym kepar of it, whiche how hath faylle\(^3\) me. but by my soule, yt I may take hym, and that he come
in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
24 Sortybrant answerd: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng
amernayllyd of your tresour, nse wroth ayenst Mahon, for
he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for
he is a-slepe; I bylene none other: for in tyme passed
28 he hath wel watched \& kepte it; but those frenshh men
ben so wyly theues pat they haue stolen it fro hym
subtylly." Thadmyral beyng\(^4\) al angry bycause the
nyght came on repayred\(^4\) with his peple toward hys
32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte
table, Rouland\(^*\), whiche was in the hye toure surely
with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

\(^1\) orig. tresour. \(^2\) g vij. bk. \(^3\) orig. payne. \(^4\) orig. And' repayred'.
and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng at the table through the wyndowe, and\after cam to the other barons and sayd to them: "1 my lordes and brethren, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4 hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease, and me semeth it sholde be grete honour and prowess to vs to make hym lene\2 his repaste." The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8 accorde, & hastily they arm\d them and\p put them in poynte, and fayr yssued out, comynge to the place where the admiral was, but the admiral, whiche was subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and\q sente hastily for a 12 paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and was hys nueewe. And sayd to hym: "Espoulart, cosyn, peraduenture the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therfore depesshe the, and\r be redy anone, and\d doo so 16 that they be taken & destroyed." And\e anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holding in hys honde a dart of stele. And fyrst he encountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his 20 shielde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed; but it came soo to passe that it touched not hys fleshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24 he made hym overthowre fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght,\3 that moche lightly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28 wyse that the paynym wyster where he was. And\f as he was falling doun of hys hors, Rolland moche pys-sauntly caught hym, & layed hym thwart vpon hys hors, and bare hym awaye. The admiral, seeyng thys, al in a 32 rage eseryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys neueewe, but they wyster not what to doo. For in defendyng them many of them were slayn and hurte

1 g viij. back, col. 2. 2 orig. lene. 3 g viij.
Roland captures Espoulart, Balan's nephew.

II. iii. 1.] Roland captures Espoulart, Balan's nephew.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of reveray force the other paynyms must retorne: & Roland cessed not to reyne tyl that he was at the toure. And when al the barons of France were wythin, they slette the yates wel surely, and had noo feare of ony emppshemen.

Here begynmeth the thyrd' partye of the second' book which conteyneth xvj chapters, And' speketh how the barons of France were socoured & the paynyms confused'.

Of the moeuyng of the peres of France for to goo shewe theyr aflayres vnto kyng Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

The peres of France beyng thus assyeged and deteyned, as I have said afore, had taken a turke moche fyers, and grete frende of the admiral, whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it plesed hym: & they demaunded of hym what man he was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansered: "he is son of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche & hath grete puysance. And ye ye wyl do grete dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc

Naymes moche wyse sayd to hym: "Madame, it is not behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man of aucitoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we been the more loyous, and I shal say to you wher:

fore: ye peraduenture one of vs were taken of our enemyes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred and changed for hym." And of thys conclusyon were conteute al the peres of France. Thenne after thys, Rychard of Normandye called the other his felawes, and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here but the French all escape into the castle. (3410)

They ask Floripes who their prisoner is, (3411) She tells them he is Balan's nephew. (3418)

Naymes proposes to keep him to exchange for any of them which might be taken. (3452)

Naymes proposes to keep him to exchange for any of them which might be taken.

CHARL. ROM. III.
Richard of Normandy proposes
that they should
send a message to
Charles for help.  
(3425)

Naymes says that
no one dare go on
the message.  
(3127)

for the country is
all covered with
Saracens.

Floripas says they
had better enjoy
themselves as well
as they can.  
(3153)

Thierry again
proposes to send
a messenger to
Charles.  
(3156)

Oger asks who
will venture on
such a dangerous
expedition.  
(3159)

Roland offers to
go, but Naymes
protests.  
(3167)

enclosed in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the
taste we must needes fayle, and deye by these Saracins.
We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf;
and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold 4
conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he
shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an
ende.” The duc Naymes answereth and sayeth: “Syr
ryhard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For 8
there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym
for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see
that the contree is al couerl with saracyns, for assonce
as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Imposyble to escape 12
wyth hys lyf And be ye sure, but ye god doo for vs
and shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens.”
herupon Florypes sayeth: “I can not say at thys tyme
none other thynge, but that we lede the moost Ioyous 16
lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye
hawe here fayre maydens, ech of you take one at hys
playsyr.” Theome Rollande and his felowes, for these
wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked 20
preysed hys afectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne,
whyche was moche angry, saydeth: “My brethern and
my lorde, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shetle
here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we 24
shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough
tofore our eyen, late us soo conclude that our fayle may
be notefyed unto charles, that he or hys pussesance 2
may come socoure vs.” Ogyer answereth and sayeth: 28
“for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy
that dare presume it ne take it on hym.” “Yes,” said
rolland, “I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to
goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my denoyr.” The 32
duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, answereth
and sayeth: “Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge
vs ye are the moost vnconenable for to goo thyer: for

1 g viij, bk,  
2 g viij, bk, col. 2.
II. iii. 1.] RICHARD OFFERS TO GO ON THE MESSAGE.

when the Paynyms shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And when we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemies in drede of vs."

4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandoned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Floripes wold neuer consente therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rychard 8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, sufysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valynte. And yf it happene that in doyng thys message I be taken & slayn of the paynyms, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd.

But Kolland maad hym to promyse tofore his departying, that he shold not tarye in ony place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rychard promysed it & sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rychard, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowne by them in ony wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them."

Roland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyon here vpon. I councellyl that to morn erly we be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours to which they all agree. (3129)

William and Gerard offer to go, (3471) as also Guy, but Floripes will not let him go. (3477)

At last Richard says he will go, (3180)
and di-tract the attention of the Saracens while

Richard steals away in the other direction. (3529)

The knights weep over Richard’s danger. (3547)

Richard bids them fear nothing,

for by God’s grace he will soon bring succour.

and do greetly our denoyr, & they shal be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs. Rychard shal departe & passe forth & leue 1 vs, & we shal remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4 whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shal move be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete moder, he shal sane hym self, by suche manere, that in 8 shorte tyme we shal haue loye & consolacyon that we shal hastily goo out surely.” Thys sayeng, the peres of fraunce, seeynge that this thyng was not yet achyeued surely, begommen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of Rychard’s danger. (o527) tlicyr affayre. The noble due 2 rychard, seeynge his felowes wepyng 3 for hym, sayd to them: “my lorde, ne doubt ye noo thyng ye swete moder, I may wel ensure you that I shal brynge you socours in suche wyse that by the grace of god ye shal sone be delyuert.” 20 The barons answered to hym: “Ihesus, by hys myght and puysassance, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!” After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyȝt cam on, & everych of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24 morne for to begynne to complysshetheyr enterpryse.

How after that rychard was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng, ranne after hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd 28 Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges:
capitulo

But a great disappointment was in store for them.

Rete gryef and annoyce cam to 30 peres of fraunce when Rychard of Normandye shold departe for 32 to goo to kyng charles. On the morne whan

1 h i, col. 2. 2 orig. dul. 3 orig. brydde. 4 h i, back.
they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whych kepte the passage that none of the frensche men shold yssue out. Wherfore by the space of ij monethes they coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day cmonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntyng a lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the bridge was forgotten, Theone the barons arme<del>de</del> them & <del>mounted</del> on horsback, and wente rennyng vnto theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the paynyms, they blewe vp homes & trorapettes, & began to sowne so terribly, that anone peple Innumerable were there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce. and thus whan they were al enclosed<del>de</del> wyth theyr enemies, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The due Rychard<del>al</del> in wepyng<del>de</del> comman<del>de</del> to god his felawes, And secretely departe<del>de</del>, and took hys waye at al aduenture, & tofore that his felawes were at theyr lodgyngs, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and 20 in this maner they reentred<del>de</del> in to the toure surely, and mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre <del>due</del> rychard<del>al</del> whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the hoost; and in wepyng<del>de</del> they recomman<del>de</del> hym sweetely to god<del>de</del> many tymes. Rychard of Normandye thus rydyng<del>de</del> allone, had feare alwaye that he shold be assayllet<del>de</del>, when he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a montayn, his hors was sore chaiuned, & bledde habum-dantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly that he shold be empeess<del>de</del>, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd<del>de</del>: "O lord<del>de</del> god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is ordeyned<del>de</del>, thys day preserne my body from myn eneymes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf," & blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many tymes, he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperecyued

1 h i, back, col. 2.
hym, & after, sortybrant of Conyymbres, whyche were bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastily to Kynge Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral, and brullant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4 yonde messager,1one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may come therby harme to vs; for yf ye recounte theyr 8 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne to vs grete dommage." Also sone as claryon herde these tydynges, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon Lys hors, the moost merucyllous that euer was seen, 12 Tor for to renne xxx leghes he wold not be wery; & took hys sheld & his swerd of stede square & sharpe, & ranne toward Due Rychard as he had be enraged, & other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rychard mounted 16 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed, & sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorrowful and sore greued, and that I may make them Joyeful," & thus as he was in this thou3t he loked behynde hym, & sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche 24 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye. Neuertheles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28 byhelde the boost of the paynyns came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was, what thyng my3t he thynk that they wold do wyth hym, & what tydynges his felowes shold 32 hauce of hym, when he was there alone for tabyde & susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

1 h ij. 2 h ij. col. 2.
vpon the sayd coursour, whiche ranne faster and more swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whiche coursour was alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflamméd. The tayle after the facion of a pecock, the croupe behynde somwhat reysed & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete thyes & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eerees; 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large & ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene & clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; & he was saddled with a sadle of yuorye, & the raynes of 12 p' brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold; the poytreal wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrdle with iiiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng moche melodously.

16 & p' paynym smote hym with the spores moche sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more than xxx foot longe. And after esceryed due Rychard the noble knyght, sayeng wyth an hye voys: "by 20 Mahoum, my souerayn god, thou messager shalt neuer achyene thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng ony further, thou shalt he re ende thy lyf." when rychard vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was mocued

24 & chaunged, & ansuered: "Sarasyn, wherfore arte thou of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed thy tresour. I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be rewarde to the by me." The paynym answered: "certayn, frenshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of 32 mahoum be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng for the. I shal not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world." Also sone as Rychard knewe hys entencyon, he annaced ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rychard, & wyth

In front comes
Clarion on a horse, half white, half red, (3659)
with a peacock's tail,
a white mane, and green eyes.

His breast piece is hune with little gold bells.

Clarion calls on Richard to surrender. (3673)

Richard asks him to let him go, as he has never done him any harm. (3684)

Clarion declares he will have his life. (3686)

1 h ij. back.
Richard slays Clarion and takes his horse. [II. iii. 2.]

Richard smites Clarion on the neck, and cuts his head off. (5704)

He takes Clarion's horse, (5705)

and lets his own go, bidding it an affectionate fare-well. (5713)

The Saracens coming up try to catch Richard's horse, but in vain. (5730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys shielde; but it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon Richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym, by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys swerde which was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym, lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned onerthwart the necke so ryft in a joynete, that he smote of his nede, in suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a spere lengthe, & he put his trunke of the body to the erthe at dede; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors, & mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym, whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne Richard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel pourneyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that ye he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold not hawe svette a droppe of water; & for to swymme & passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym, & after that he was thus horsed at his case, he said to his owen hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn, for the I am sorrowful that I may not condyte the in to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen that he drawe in to suche a wayte that thou mayst come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them, in many grete bataylles & eayl passages thou hast wel serued me, & of thy grete servyce, as moche as apper-teyneth to me I thanke the gretyely." & here vpon he wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sarasyns that followed after, came & fonde the kyng: Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were so surpreysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude doe none other thyng but fyrst to reune for to take Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad grete defence, & took hys waye remnyng for to retourne to the place that he was departed fro.

1 h ij, back, col. 2. 2 h iiij.
How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh theexcorsyte of the admyral, & was seen & known of the peres of Fraunce, in soo moche that they thought that duc Rychard' had' been deed'; & how the brydge of Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

Richard of Normandy wyth his swerde in hys fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of whome the helde was on that one syde of the waye, & the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte

The Saracenys find Clarion's body, and lament over him. (3724)

The Saracenys find Clarion's body, and lament over him. (3724)

Balan see Richard's horse running loose. (3740)

Balan sees Richard's horse running loose. (3740)

and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

He orders the horse to be caught, [3711]

but none can catch him.

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messager of the Frensche men; that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors that yonder cometh," and thadmyrall commanded that

20 neewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other. and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

He orders the horse to be caught, [3711]

but none can catch him.

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messager of the Frensche men; that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors that yonder cometh," and thadmyrall commanded that

20 neewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other. and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

He orders the horse to be caught, [3711]

but none can catch him.

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messager of the Frensche men; that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors that yonder cometh," and thadmyrall commanded that

20 neewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other. and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

He orders the horse to be caught, [3711]

but none can catch him.

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messager of the Frensche men; that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors that yonder cometh," and thadmyrall commanded that

20 neewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other. and thinks that Richard has been killed. (3742)

He orders the horse to be caught, [3711]

but none can catch him.
They are all in great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he have pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal never haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal never haue none helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these 1 wordes, & also the other, wepte betterly. here-upon came Floripes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them:

"Lorde, in the honour of god, lene your lamentyng and sorowe: we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whych he hadde lefte Rychard ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brouthe the body of kyng Claryon. And when Thadmyral sawe them come, he beynge in the ethroelytes in hys entendement, cryed & sayd: "and how is it? is myn neuewe in good poynte?" The sarasyns answerd: "Syr admiral, we may not lye to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde thereof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to therth al in a traunse, and he swooned more than iij tymes as he hadde been dede. thus emonge al the sara syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The sarasyns thus makin the body of the sarasyn, the barons of fraunce hende & understood them, & specially Floripes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland: "Syr, knowe ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is trouth that Rychard your messager hath slayn the kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareyllie of boute in al the world, & as wel for deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thy sorowe & torment that ye see & here. Wherfore I praye you that every man doo hys deuoyr, to lede a good lyf & to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland joyously: "O my felawe of 1 h iij. back. 2 h iij. back, col. 2.
armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydylnges that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though 4 I were in the strongest castel of fraunce. blessyd be richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to 8 hym named Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre, which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge the to reyne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuance and ennoyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on that other parte the messager of the frensshe men goeth thyder, and yt he recounte his message to Charles, it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther- 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yt he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages 24 the messager, "I shal do your commaundemente; and I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as that other shal do in foure days. for, for to ryde an hondred leghes contynuall, I shal neuer be wery." 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromy- dary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantrible, and spake to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou 32 suffredest the frensshi men to passe ouer the brydge, whyche haue doon to hym grete dammage, for they be lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon the goddes, with floripes his dou3ter, and haue slayn

1 h iiiij.
many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmyral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is thys: After me cometh a messager, whiche is one of the barons of Francce, whiche gooth for to fetche ayde, vnto Charles theyr kyng; the whiche hath slaye kyng Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shait not come fynde the manere to sane thy lyf, but that thou shalt deye vylaynsly.” Of these words Galafre was perturbed & replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and had smyton the messager yf it had not be letted by them that were presente. ¶ Xenerethles he mounted vpno a tournette, and with the sowne of a trompette he assembled many men of armes, whiche were in nombre 16 xv M, whiche were anone of horsback, and passed the brydge. And when they were ousi, it was anone lyfte vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to reconatre p messager of the frenssh men, yf by aduence ture they myst fynde hym.

¶ How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofore hym: [ca.]

Richard is in great doubt how to pass Maunrilde. Ychard of Normandye, messager of the frenshe barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by hym self myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And in rydyng he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the contree couerd wyth men of armes. thus byhouldyng theym he was sore troubled in hys mynde, [&] began to crye: “O Ihesus, kyng of glorye, at thys tyme be thou kep of my body, & conservator of my soule, For I

1 h iiiij. col. 2. 2 h iiiij. back.
see wel the declyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght, I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I ente in to this hydous ryuer, I shal not cone passe ouer. Thus

at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force returned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defalute to therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed\(^1\) faythfully to doo my denoyr for to doo my message. Wherfore, my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy wylle be fulfylled and doon of me. thou knowest myn entencion: after the same gouerne me,” he beyng\(^2\) hyghe the ryuer, the sarasyn maden grete brynyst in comyng\(^3\) to hym, emonge whom a neuenew of the admiral announced hym to remye ageynst hym, & cryed\(^4\) wyth an hyghe voye: “O messager, what someuer thou be, thynke for to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is my hour

12 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged.”

These wordes so herde of rychard were\(^2\) not to hym ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly he spored his hors ayenst hym, holding\(^5\) a swerde in hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had\(^6\) conquerd of Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daungerously ayenst the breste, that it perced\(^7\) thorugh the shielde in to hys body, that he fyld doun to therthe al deed\(^8\); & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and byhelde it that it ryme lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe, and roed\(^9\) lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

\(^1\) orig. pormysed

\(^2\) h iiij. back, col. 2.
for to passe ouer, god sente a whyte herte which passed tofore rychard: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde.

And the ryuer began to aryste 1 soo hye that it flowed ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water; and Rychard loked behynde hym, & sawe many sara
dsens come in a grete multytyde for to put hym to deth; 8 and thenne he recommanede hym to god wyth good hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body, hauynge in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he myght persenere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12 passe ouer the ryuer; and soo toke the water & folowed the hert. The paynyms seynge that, were al abashed and troubled, and there was not one that durst folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed, and 16 returned in to hys former estate and beyng. Thenne the paynyms made grete duel and sorowe by cause they myght not haue the messager. 7 Galafre, whyche that was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20 and aualed the chaynes, and commanded the paynyms, vpon payne of deth, that they sholde not cesse tyl that rychard were taken, or ellys they sholde be all in the Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and in daunger to be loste.

Rychard of Normandy came ouer in good poynte, and denowtelye thanked god of the grace that he had sente to hym, and descended fro hys hors for to vngyrde and lose hys sadle. 2 And after resengled hym, and took his hors and rode forth at hys ease, and ladde that other hors on hys ryght syde, & doubted thenne nomore, For in shorte tyme he supposed to fynde the xersyte of kyng Charles. The paynyms seeyng thys, returned 32 sorrowfully, & wente to vnamne them, For other thynge coude they not do.

1 h v. 2 h v. col. 2.
II. iii. 5.] GANELON ADVISES CHARLES TO RETURN HOME. 159

How charles was in purpoos to retorne, wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-

cceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes; & other maters: capitulo

IX as moche as rycha\^ rode, whyche was moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons, whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, auhert, macliayre, and many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of Olyuer, to whome he sayd: “lornes and frendes, I am in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynoogh apparent, whyche is of my speeyal barons, whyche were sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that 16 no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from them; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd? I despyse my self. Themne by more strenger reason the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-

sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle. Take ye there, loo! the crowne of mageste, take it! For I depose my self from hens forth.” Ganelon was there which was Joyeful, what somueuer semblauwt he made, and sayd: “syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone commaunde that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, & that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers, and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche stronge; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynyms & sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde; And by cause that Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad\^ crysten, so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you: And on

Meanwhile, Charles is in great trouble about his knights. (1004)

He calls his barons, tells them his trouble,

and declares his intention of resigning the crown. (1015)

Ganelon advises him to give orders for a return home. (1025)

for Balan is too strong for them,
that other partes your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure you: Retorne we in to Fraunce. We have lefte there many of our chylde and parents that shal wexe grete; and or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. 

And thenne theye with vs 1 shal come in to spayne, for to conqueste the bondes and seygonouryes that we haue enterpyse[d], And shal reconyne the holy relyques, of whom I haue grete pyte. And more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8 deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys melancholye; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." When Charles herde these wordes of Ganelon, he was smytyn wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun 2 in a 12 swonne, And spake not the space of a grete houre; and in wepyng betterly he sayd 3 to hym self: ¶ "O poure caytyf and unhappy, what shal thou do? yf thou retorne, pou shalt be dysonourued, yet were it better to 16 lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he was come to hymself, he sayd 4 to lys barons that were there: "Loo! ye see the conseneyl that ganelon gyueth to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20 wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me, but I shal be shamed, and wyth good ryght." Machayre, anblerry, and geffroy, and other, moo than an hondred, 24 whych al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganelon the moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd 5 alle wyth one consente: "Syr emperour, purpose 3 ye not to do otherwyse than ganelon hath sayd, For he 28 hath spoken wysely; and therfor conclude ye to retorne in to fraunce wythout goyng: ony further on, we ben xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyder that, for ony thynge that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo further. 32 For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue losse theyr comforthe, & hym that was chyef of the conserva'yon of their persones." Charles, at henty, answerd 6: "O god of

---

1 h v, back, col. 2.  
2 orig. doun.  
3 h vj.
heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge them—He that gaf me suche commeyll, loueth me but lytel, I see wel." Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,
auros vp and sayd: "O Emperour, yf thou byleue
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce shal be so euyl, that by them at fraunce shal be wasted & brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage, they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly." Thenne they
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and sayd: "Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng is present, ye shold lose your hede and it 1 shold be
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought."

"The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Inuurye, but
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth his fist in suche wyse that he ouerthrew to grounde; and there were made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and
24 tranquylyte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganelon. But fyerabras, which was present, blamed themstrongely; And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef attaynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.
32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as soone as they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to come to hym, and said to them: "ye haue done to me

1 h vj, col. 2.
Charles orders
Alorya to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.

(4119)

Geoffrey d'Hautefeuille advises
Charles to follow
Ganelon's advice.

(4163)

Charles gives way,
and orders the
retreat home to
France. [4189]

(to the great grief
of Rayner and
others. [4195]

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore
me, I shal do opene justyce. Alwaye nedes must the
kynge be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory\(^1\) on hys
knees cryed\(^2\) duc Rayner merce, but he wold neuer haue\(^4\)
doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of
kyng charles; & thus they made the pees. And\(^4\) after
themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he turned backe
that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam\(^8\)
geffroy daultenylle, fader of Ganelon, whych sayd:\(^f\):
"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thynges,
wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel
as ony persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I\(^12\)
and Ganelon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how
that it be that he coungeyleth you to retorne, hath good
ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused\(^3\) for beryng
of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere\(^16\)
be passed, the chyldren that be now in fraunce shal be
grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a
companye, that ly3tely ye shal moye conquere spayn, and
anenge the deth of rollant\(^5\) and of hys other felowes."\(^20\)
When Charles understode these wordes, he wepte byt-
terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wylle
retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfor
by the sowne of trompettes was cryed\(^6\) the retraytte.\(^24\)
And\(^7\) anone the artylleryes were assembled\(^7\) and the
harnoys trussed, wherof\(^2\)the companye of traytres were
loyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, &
in especyal Reyner, whych retorne withoute hys sone\(^28\)
Olyner, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was
hys hert, by cause he hath\(^8\) loste al hys comforthe.

\(\text{How after the complaynte of Charles,}
\text{Rychard come vnto hym, whych tolde to 32}\)

\(^1\) h vj, back. \(^2\) h vj, back, col. 2. \(^3\) orig. hast.
If Charles was mounted on horsback, and in wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland, Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them without to do otherwyse his deuyr: he taryed sayeng:

"O unhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe when I now kene the men that I lone best in the world, and retorne fro them, when I ought by good ryght to aueiige them. I shall be reputed for a fool, & sore blamed. O Rolland, how I haue loued you! may euer your vnclle so longe he swoons from grief."

Thys sayeing, almost he fyld a swoon to the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had: moche heuynes had he that tyme. "Alas!" sayd Charles, "Rolland, I was moche euyl auyed when I consented that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral! wel am I cause of all your perdyeyon!" In makyng thys heuynes, the army prepares to start home. The boost made soo grete bruyt to retoure, that it was mercuylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The emperour loked toward the est, and from fere he sawe rychard come rydyng vpon an hors sore rennyng, and he seme of hys rydyng that he is rychard of normandye. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other barons, that they be alyue." Thenne the boost taryed, and anone came richard, whiche maade hys hors to lepe and orders a halt. He recognizies Richard. 247.
moche gentilly tofore the kyng, whom he salwe\footnote{\textit{h. vij. col. 2.}} moche humbly. And\footnote{\textit{h. vij. back.}} themne charles sayd to rychard\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} of normandye: “Some of noble baron, how is hyt wyth you? what is bycomen of my neewe Rolland and of myn other barons? be ye come alleone? be they alyue or dede? telle me, I praye you.” Rychard\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} ansered: “Syr Emperour, Rolland\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} & the other, when I departed fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8 in aygremore, in a strouge toure, bysye\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} by ballant the admiral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been aboute them an honred\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} thosa\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} sarasyns. And\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12 fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} & Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but that they shal be hanged by the necke. And\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} on that other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16 curtoys daughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that ever was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} the reluyques that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue 20 theyr lyues. And\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} yf it please you to remembre them, ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other goodes ynhogh.” Grete consolacyon had kyng\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} Charles, And\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} themne he conceyued\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} wel that Gannelon was a 24 traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} neuer after hys oune\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} nor was it abode not 2 but Rolland\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} and hys felowes shol l haue dyed. “Now 28 gentyl Rychard,” sayd the kyng, “is the toure in whyche they been bysye\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} , stronge & wel garnysshed\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle? yf they may holde vj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32 hys comlyees.” “Syr,” ansuered\footnote{\textit{1 h. vij. col. 2.}} Rychard, “I shal say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they gete it with the swerde, thadmyral is meruyllously
fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle, the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is 4 on thys syde of the town the brydge of mantryble, where the passage is moche damagerys, and the walles of that cyte ben made of marble cymented and fortefyed with toures, and there renneth a ryner ryzt hydous, whyche 8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij sperss of lengthe, & renneth so fast and brayeth, that there is noo bote ne shyppe may passe theron, and the brydge is half a myle longe, And in the myddes there is a toure1 of marble 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon; & the yate is garnysshed & kepeth wyth barryers of yron fast locked.

Richard tells him that the tower is surrounded by the Saracens, and that he will have to pass the bridge of Mantrible, (4399)

The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous and grete, massyf, stronge and 2 felonous, whyche bet-
16 ter resemblith the dcvyl than ony man or persone. he is as blacke as pytche boylled, & hath x thousand knyghtes in his companye, wherfore I wote wel that by force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may 20 be doon to them, they doubte it not. And yf we passe not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo over the brydge; For by force we may noo thyng do, but it byhoneth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And 24 somme of vs shall be wel armed under our clothes; and there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr swerdes under, And there shal come after vs grete som-
28 myers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that every man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue gotten the fyrst gate, I shal soune & blowe myn horne, And wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal have the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to our entencyon.” Thys councelye was wel approved by the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd rychard by cause he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple, 1 orig. toure. 2 h vij, back, col. 2.
The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouered. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente & honde heye and grasse to-gyдрe, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar-
chauntes. every man wel armed vnder hys cloke, & swerde gyдрe, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon-
dred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryne to-
fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nauntes folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythouth 12
taryng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maad meneyon.

How by the moyen & councelyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16
strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne; And what
maner man galafre was: capitulo viij

Hemperour charles, with an honderd thousand men, 20
abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of nor-
mandye, hoel of Nauntes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other
peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on
the waye to goo toward man-tryble, and ladde wyth 24
them a quantyte of sommyers charged, whan the fellowes
of Rychard sawe the ryner of flagot so rorying, And
thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge
soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en-
chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed.
For, for to come thyder by asumite, alle the payssonne
of crystendon myght not entr by that place, but they
auaded the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de-
maundede of Rychard: "What may there be of this
place?" And he answerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afraied, and com-maunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe thyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyll goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we have passd the fyrst 8 yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte upon the paynyms: & for ony thynge that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol answerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sara-syns but that I shal doo my denoyr that it shal appycre: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyll that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; 16 & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyledd that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and foorded so 20 hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyllled pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote 24 longe, his ceres so grete that they myyt conteyne wcl half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynowh. Ballant thadmyral loud 28 hym moche, & was his newewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the kepyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of 32 that contreye. And the sayd paynym was consetable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarie that none of the frensse men shold haue be known of hym. For yf there had ony be known, there shold

---

Richard encour-ages them, and tells them to follow him. (4413)

Galafre sees them coming. (4427)

---

He is as hideous as a devil,
pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balu loved him greatly

---

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4415)
neuer none haue escaped but he shold haue ben dede. Thus, themne, when they were 1 at mantryble, Rychard passed afore, and whan he was at the entre of the gate, Galafre came to hym & sayd: "vassal, what are ye? wherfore come ye hyther?"

¶ Rychard, whych was wyse, chaunged his langage, & began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other marchauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we goo to present our marchauntes; and yf we were at Aygremore, we shold soiourne there, and gyue to thadmiralsome precyous yeftes that we here brynge. These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr, we praye to aduyse vs of what we may best do, & by what 16 waye we ought to goo." Galafre answered: "knowe ye, that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were messagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord thadmoral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them that other day escaped preuyly away as a theef, whiche 24 rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & 2 passed ouer thys renyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn the kyng Claryon, for whom I am in grete melancolye, now wolde god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28 brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely wythout to haue ony mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmoral doubteth of treason, For his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the 32 paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he com- mandede me thre tymes that I shold not suffre ony persone, lord, knyght, ne sernytour, to passe, And that

1 h viij. back, col. 2.  
2 i j.
I shold serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe what ye be." Rychard heryng thys, bowed his hede:

4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and Reyner of genes goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he began to doubte, and sayd to them that there shold nomoo entre, and aunoaunce hym and drewe vp the brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche he dredd not, and sayd to them in grete sferste: "ye are ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my commaundemente, And therfor ye four shal be sette in pryson, and the other that come after you also. And to-morn I shal sende you prysoners to my lord thad-myrrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there vnder, For ye seme people for to do enyl." Thus sayeng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym theryb foure tymes aboute: "By god," sayd Ryol, "I may no lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn; ye I suffer lenger, be I confounded!" And therwyth he threwe of his cloke, and smote vpon the paynym; but he was so strongly armed that he myght do hym no harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rychard the others cut at him, but cannot hurt him. (541)

and calls on them to surrender. (4517)

and cuts of a piece of his ear.

24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and eche of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes; but the heed ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and maylled.

9 Thys Paynym was angry, and supposed for to haue smyton Ryol, and enhaunced hys axe that was grete and heuy and also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke com, and was habylle, and lepte a syde, and the stroke smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claiffe a marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted.

1 i j, col. 2.
"Ha! god of heaven!" sayd Rayner, "how he smyteth outrageously! I am al abasshed of the puys-saunce of thys demyl whom we may not conquere ne gryene." He thus sayinge, he took a grete branche of a tree whiche was longe and stronge, and aduyseyd and marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to therthe; & whan he was onerthrown, he maad a crye so hyc and hydous that the Ryner and the rockes made grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynysms of man-trylbe were moeced and assembled, that within a lytel whyle there were redy armed more than x thousand. 12 there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Nor-mandy ranne to the yate of the brydge, & analed down the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred knyghtes whych the fourbe barons had brought wyth them; but at the entre of the gate the paynysms encountered them: there was a grete medle and recontre; many mortal strokes were there glyuen, many were there slayne and hurte. Eychard took hys horn and souned it hyeely thre tymes. Charles themperour understooȝ it wel, whych was in the wood aforesayd with al his puyssaunce. Evrey man was on horsback moche redyl, and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came to the brydge. 24 Ganellan, whych after was tray-tour, bare hym valyantly. For he was the fyrst that cam to the brydge wyth hym confounde reysed; but the loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hym kynnesmen endureþ 28 not lontye, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe, by the playsyr of god. 170

How by force and strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred in to mastryble, after that 32 Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng that

1 i j. back. 7 i j. back, col. 2.
alory the traytre was contrarye to hym; and many other maters: capitulo viij.

At theatre of mantryble were moche hurt people & confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns, and at that tyme temperour bare hym wel, For whome he attayned wyth hys swerde named loyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely, and that day was alway by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel hys denoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on pe grounde, which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys axe in hys honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrty frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeync the harme that he had doon to the frenssh men, anone commaunded to slee hym; and so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquer or destroye. To thys medle came a gynant moche fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had borne two sones, whiche were but iiij monethes olde, and were two foot brede in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystoffe sayth. Thys gynant opened the gate, & helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf, and whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys tenebrousse and dyabolyke he cryed: “Where is charles the kyng of fraunce? Wyl he now bere wyth hym the...
relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I conforte my self, it were better 1 for hym, olde dotan?, that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe certanly, that yt thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer 4 haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be slayn, & hanged alle quycke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after that he had thus spoken, he smote down many frensshe men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were 8 seen and founden so grete a multytyde of dede men that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe the facyon, descended anil lyght of hys hors, alle wroth in hys courage, & sette hys sheldre tofore hym, wyth hys sword in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng* & he were assembled, Charles wyth hys sworde loyous smote hym soo myghtely that he clefte hym in two pyeces, & 16 myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad' hym falle to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherfore the Sarasyns were all moeued & affrayed, And' as people enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with darte, 20 plombettes, and other engynes mortal. ¶ And thenne Charles cryed' socours for to assemble hys people. And wyth that crynge came to hym Rychard of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24 Syr Ryol du mauns, 2 whyche alle had courage lyke unto lys. These four barons wyth charles made the pay-nyms to remene, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28 were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette it, in makyng grete defence with bowes and other shotte, besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages, which were wel, as thystorye maketh meneyon, fyue 32 thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to lyfte vp the brydge, For it was covered and kept ayenst the sarasys by the frensshe men. There was 1 i ij, col. 2. 2 i ij back.
grete bruyn in thys recountre: And though Charles doubted, it was noo meruaryle. For he knewe wel that yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of the towne, it had not be possyble to hym to hauue passed over. And he, seeynge them reyse vp toward the yate grete barres of yron, supposed not to hauue passed, And wyth a moche woouful herte began to wayle Roulland his neuwee, and the other hys felowe, as he shold never haue seen them.

Richard of Normandy consyderynge thys, escryed and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte down these Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despyed, and wyth good ryght.

And I praye to god that he be confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs anuance vs, For now it is nede that eche man prone hys strengthe and the valure of hys persone." Wyth these wordes of a grete courage, entred in to the towne, Charles, Reynor, Hoel, Ryol, and Richard, These syue onelye, ech wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete slaughter of turkes and of Paynymys.

Charles, seyng come grete multytyde of sarasyns, cryed "a larnie and socours" moche hye and furyously. Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte; Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good; & came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to assayle the yate. The turkes manfy grete defiency wyth brondes and barres of yron and mortal shiotte, where as

Charles is almost in despair. (4712)

Richard encourages him. (4715)

Charles calls for assistance. Ganellon hears him, and wishes to help hym. (4729)

1 i ii. back, col. 2.
many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganelon: "in sayth, we ben grete foes for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thy torment." And after he sayd to ganelon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empresshed: god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Eynyr we are wel aucenge of the contradyctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that followeth them onther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, & holde it wythin contradyctyon, seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs con-

"God forbid!" says Ganelon.

Alory presses Ganelon to retire, and leave Charles to his fate. (4759)

"God forbid!" says Ganelon. (4753)

Alory calls him a fool; (4759)

Alory presses Ganelon to retire, and leave Charles to his fate. (4759)

but Ganelon is faithful to Charles. (1765)

Fierabras comes up, and asks where Charles is, (1775)

Fierabras comes up, and asks where Charles is, (1775)
diede now.' Fyerabras answer'd: 'And ye emonge you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproached of treson wyth good ryght.' And after bygan to crye "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all the frens she men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganelon, that thenne had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

Fyerabras and Ganelon figlit nobly, and calls on them to succour him. (4780)

And Fyerabras thenne was wel joyous when he sawe that the brydge was not drawn up, And thenne he and Ganelon dyd greetly theyr denoyr, for to entre in to the cyte. 1 And whan they were wythin, & the traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do greetly theyr denoyr, entrede in a foot, & smote down wyth the other commelye. And greetly habundance of blode runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynyns cryed and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, when they sawe that they coude not resyste them. They sente to the admyral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but for all that, they were dyscomforted sorrowfully, put oute of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pylled of theyr rychesses and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doyng, a messager departed secretely for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte and telle the tydynges of theyrr destructyons.

How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' greetly the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptysed of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix

Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche 2 were

1 i iij, back. 2 i iij, back, col. 2.
troubled;—She was as blacke as pytche boyled; hyr eyen were rede as brendyngyre; she had a grete vysage & croked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely affrayed of the deth of hyr husband, & also aferde for 4 hyr ij sones, of whyche she was late delynerd;—soo she in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe treenchamet and meruyallly sharpe, and cam upon the frens she men so Impetuously that she maade grete 8 dyscomfytte, in suche wyse that none durst wel approche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was eyyl contente of the deth of hyss peple, and damaunded a crosse bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12 he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl domed deth to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Nevertheles, she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16 she never moested after; wherfore after that, the yates of the towne and other defences were not keppe ne defended, but that Charles dyd his wylle of alle.

Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20 the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded. For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place 1 was so stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24 kyng ordened in suche manere, that bothe grete and smale were wel contente wyth hym. And thare he abode thre dayes in departyng 2 & destrybutyng the goodes, after the degrees & quylytees of hyss subgettes. 28 And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryner flagot, In a caye were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of the fornamed geantesse Amyotte, of whomhe he was wel luyons, and were baptyshed; & one he named Roule- 32 land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to be nouysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

1 i iiiij. 2 orig. departyng.
themperour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subjection, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of mauntes, Ryol of mauns, & took councelyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed bal-

8 lant the admiral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rychard answered: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe p° brydge & toun wythe fyue thousand 12 men." and lyke as Rychard sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be helde at theyr leyzer, and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward 16 aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was meruylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the 20 multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord! god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playyr hast made me lord! and conduytour of thys people, wyth ryght good! hert I gyue to the, thankynges and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssance sythe they be at my wyll and commandemente." After that he had sayd thus, he blesseyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the 28 sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the fyghters of thrytene contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rychard of normandye was in the aunyte garde, 32 And the Duke Reyner 2 in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted, 3 wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

1 iiij, col. 2. 2 oriy. Reyner. 3 iiij, bk.

Charles consults as to whom he shall leave in charge of Mantrible. (1572)

By the advice of Richard Howel and Raoul are left there with 5000 men. (1581)

Charles, seeing the magnitude of his forces, thanks God. (1497)

He has 100,000 men.

Balan is told of the death of Galafre, and the capture of Mantrible. (1525)
man fro hym self, sayeng: "ha ! ha ! god mahon ! thy power is nought. O cursyd god & recræunte, thou art nothyng worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and hast 4 consented to my dyshonour, as I now wel see, whych oughtest wel to hate doon the contraye." Thys sayeng, the admiral took a clube with his two handes, & ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8 soo grete a stroke upon the heed, that he fyld dom, & was al to-broken. yf thatadmyral and the other paynyms were not wel abused, they myght knowe clerely theyr Infydelty and fals creancen to Inuoke the ymages 12 that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and have no consolation. A lytel understondyng and lacke of wytte, & also contraye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a thyenge made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16 : Sortibrant of Conymbres, seeyngr the desolacyon of thatadmyral, councelyllad hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastysce hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enclyne to do to 20 hym obeyssaunce, Seeyngr that Charles hath wonne by his pyssaunce my cyte and stronge tour ^of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me raost and to send out surc." Sortibrant answerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hym self of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure." Sortibrant answerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hym self of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure." Sortibrant answerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hym self of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure." Sortibrant answerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hym self of mantryble, where as I had my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure."
II. iii. 10] FIVE BREA HES ARE MADE IN THE TOWER.

How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled' more strongly than ever they were. And' the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-

erforted' by the holy relyques, by them adoured, and other maters: capitulo x

S

Ortybrant prayed, soo moche thadmyral, & with hym the olde kyng Coldroe tempeste, hym, & 

brillant de mommyere, that for thyhiurye that he hal

doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold make amends. 

The admiral beyng content for their i affection, sware 

that he shold encrease Mahon, and Augment of a thou-

sand weyzt, after their custome, of fyn gold and other 

precyosytees. And anone dyd sowe trompettes 

and other Instrumentes, at the sowe of whome where 

assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed. And the 

16 admiral maad to brynge hys engynes for to throwe 

grete stones at the toure, for to brynge it down, and also 

for to destroye the frenshe men & hys daughter. And 

thus, more feruent than ever he had been, cam for 

20 tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes therto; wyth 

whych the paynyms made fyue grete hooles in the 

toure, that thurgh the reste myght passe a carte at his 

ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland, wyth 

24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr 

hondes. stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not 

soo hardly emonge them but that they were abasshed, 

not wythstondyng they hald good wylle to defende 

28 them. Alway hym that they myght atayne with 

stones or other thynges, they soo hurtie hym that he 

dyd them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng, thad- 

myral cryed: "O my frendes and subgettes, doo your 

32 deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure; For yf ye so 
do, ye shal haue my loue entrely. And after I shal

1 i v.
make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a brennyng fyre, for she hath wel deserved it, doyng to me the dyshonour that every man knoweth." ¶ After these wordes the paynyms were more fervent than they had ben tofore, & surmounted by strengthe, scaled the toure, and mounted vp, and entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but p' last stage that was. Rolland seyng thys, sayd to them: 8 "lordes & brethren! in thonour of god our maker, late vs wyth one courage here vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe this day, but that we shal be surprysed, taken, and defecated." "Brother & fellowe," sayd 12 Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal please our creatour, & we been al good fyghtars. In the name of God, I counseyl that we yssue outhe for to assayle our enemies. I had lenger to dye there withoute, 16 and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth dyshonour." Ogyer the danoyes, and the other, sayd semblably. Florypes, seeyng thys, was al abasshed, and demanded the barons yf they wold goo out for to goo assayle the paynyms, & sayd to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour & of good partye, I praye to god that at this tyme yene you grace to doo wel, And I promise you 2 yf ye put them outhe from thys assaulte, I 24 shal shewe to you a thynge wherof ye shal be joyeful." wyth tho wordes 3 the barons goo smyte and hewe down the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede & hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote 28 them wyth stoones in the toure, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anon as they had goten tho holes, they stopped them & faste enclosed them, and after Florypes axed 4 yrst of naymes 32 duc of banyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and sayd: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed me, and swere, that ye shold not do ony thynge ayenst my wylle. I

1 i v. col. 2. 2 i v. back. 3 orig. thordes.
wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I haue long kept." The barons heryng thys, wepte for
4 Ioye, & sworen to hyr that they shold do no thynge to hyr, but al loyalte and trouthe. Florypes wenthe thence and fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and tofore them she openede it; & assone as the relyques were taken
8 & unwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a meruayllous resplendysshour.

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, demountely Smytynge them self on their brestes by con-
12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes 1 of bauyere was the fyrst that kyssed them wyth grete reverence, & the other after, & after came to the wynowes, For the paynyms were mounted on hye. And assone as they
16 sawe them, they tumbled downe to the grounde, dede, & al to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O lord god of glorye, whyche mayst do al thynge, I thanke the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see
20 wel and knowe that these ben the relyques of whome we haue ofte spoken." And Incontynent he took hardynes and courage, and after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethren, now we be recomforted, so that we shal neuer fere ne
24 doubte paynyms ne sarasyus." And after, Florypes remysed the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-
myral sawe the prynces at the wynowes, & hys doughter wyth them; & he, ful of a fals entencyon, escried
28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold be understonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where thou art. A grete fool was thy fader when he trusted the, & ful of folysshe councelyl was he that put in thy
32 hande, by the moyen of thy langleage, the fyrst prysoners. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche fool. but nevertheles thy puterye shal 2 not endure

1 i v, back, col. 2.  2 i vj.
The French throw the Saracen idols at their assailants.

Floripes threatens him with a stick, (5003)

The Saracens make a furious assault and a great part of the wall is broken down. (5101)

The French use the Saracen idols as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons with rage, (5117)

The admyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20 hiss courage, that for sorowe he tumbled doun as a dede man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took hym vp, and many wepte & made grete desolacjon for sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24 he shal euer be my frende & specyal byloued, pot wyl aducenge the shame that these glotons have doom to my goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte hym, sayengt that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28 on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou hast wel forgoten me; at the moost neede thou sayllest me: thou arte now so old that thou dotest. I have seen 32 the day that yon haddest grete puysswance." 4 Sortybrant answerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan ye spake so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

1 i vj. col. 2.
there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good a god: he gyueth vs plente of whete, of wyn, and of other goodes also; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyll he be better aduyset, And the frengshe men shal yelde them vnto you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Upon these wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a decyyl entre& in to hym, whyche sayde in thys manere after that he had aduyset hym: "Admyral, ryche lord, ne dyscomfort you not: do sowne your trompettes and assemble your peple, & after assayle the toure; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frengs the men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al rejoyced, and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette aynst the toure, and throwe stones and maad grete shotte aynst the toure, whyche was thanne al to-broken, and almost al overthrown. The peres of Fraunce seyyng thys, had grete doubte of damager, and not wythout cause. Nevertheles, Ogier the damoys sayde to hys felawes: "O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fydelyte, Forony payne or double of deth emonge vs, late none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffire to entre in to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse, ye see now at the toure goth to grounde, And almoost these sarasyns be medle& wyth vs. But as touching to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule shal depar te fro my body, yf I haue the payssance to holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so grete a dyscomfyture of these payynys, that evry man shal mernaylle." With these wordes Rolland dyhelde durandal; and Olyner, with everyche of the other, dyhelde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the sarasyns, and there dyd suche dyslygence, that alle-

---

1 orig. plente. 2 i vj. back. 3 i vj, back, col. 2.
Naymes sees Charles coming to their aid.

Waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sarasyns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Floripes, consyderying theyr affayre, was sorrowful that no socours com to hem, and also remembryng the menaces of hyr fader hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted hyr alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of thooth of charles, and' the admyral also; and' how Guanellon bare hym merueyllously, which allone was sente to the admyral, and' what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

How the peres of Fraunc had' tydynges of thooth of charles, and' the admyral also; and' how Guanellon bare hym merueyllously, which allone was sente to the admyral, and' what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

Floripes thanks God for the news,

A messenger tells Balan that the French army is coming.

Naymes from a window sees Charles and his army coming.
every man should be armed, and that they should go meet with him at the first point. His council was approved by the admiral and by the others. Wherefore one thousand Turks were assembled in the great point for to keep the great vale of Issus, to thende that he might not come in to Aygremore. Roland saw Rychard of Normandy with his council was approved by the admiral and by the others. Therefore anone one thousand Turkes were assembled in He sends 50,000 men to meet them.

The French bivouac for the night. (5251)

In the morning Charles tells Fyerabras that if Balan will be baptised he shall keep all his kingdom. (5263)

Fyerabras advises Charles to send a messenger to his father. (5275)

Charles proposes to send Ganelon. (5283)

He says to them: "Lords, whome seyme you most propyce for to sende on this message to the admiral? By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good thercfore, ye he wold, for to recounte & speke hooly thys message. I sayd to them: "Ryght dere frende, thou knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I lone the the better. ye thou mytest pourchase and make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon 20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and joyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goddes I shal not take a peny. And ye he wyl not so do, I promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & ye 24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maugrre, for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyerabras, "take a mesager, and late hym demaunde hym, ye he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content. 28 For ye he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye." Hereupon Charles demaunted Reyner and rychard of Normandy, whiche were his neste counseylours, and 32 sayd to them: "Lords, whome seyme you most propyce for to sende on this message to the Admyrall? By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good thercfore, ye he wold, for to recounte & speke hooly thys message. I 1 i vij, col. 2, 2 i vij, back.
knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he dyd wel hys dew-yer at the entre of mantryble. yf ye wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rycharde answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed & renye mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8 that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suffred for al humayn creatures; & after, that he yelde to me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, & also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaund of hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys contreye & hys landes: & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted vpon his hors, named gascon, & henge on hys necke his shilde, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went in to the vale of Iosue hastely. and anone he was taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but when they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo, & he taryd not tyl that he came tofore thabytaeyon of thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly countenance, & moche resembled a baron of grete valnre, for to say wel hys message, when thadmyral knewe of his comyng; he came to hym, And themne 28 Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere: "Sara-syn, take hede & vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty Emperour, & he sendeth the wordes by me, that thou renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dyabolke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

1 i viij. back, col. 2.
deth, cruel & yetter, in the tree of the 1 crosse, for to redeem at the world. & ye thou so do, thou art assured not onely [not] to dye, & also not to lose thy londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be byloued of hym, & of Pyerabras thy sone. and ye thou wylt not accordie herto, & withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art defiyned, & al thy people.

8 & ye thou wylt saue thy self, thinke to fle & wythdrawe the fro thy contreye; For ye thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuered to daunorous deth, and alle thy subgettes shall be dysmembred & slayn, 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royame and thy rycheses to his 2 seruauntes. Therfore aluyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for 16 to smyte the messager, and sayde to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeune, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardie, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt neuer recounte to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whiche was heny & sharpe, & gaf wythal a 24 stroke to brullant of mooumyere in the breste, that he onerthrew & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whiche seyng that, escryed moche strongly tauge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty 28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whiche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iossue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chace, & demaunede Rolland 32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that he was crystyn, and by presumyng made emonge them they Judged that it was Ganellon that had spoked to thadmyral. 32 "Alas!" sayde Rolland, "I praye to
calling on him to become Christian on pain of death. (5337)

Balan, in a rage, threatens him with a stick. (5313)

Ganellon draws his sword and cuts down Bruillant. (5355)

Balan calls on his men to seize Ganellon, but he rides off and escapes. (5360)

The knights in the tower recognize him. (5371)
GANELON SLAYS TWO OF HIS PURSUERS. [II. iii. 11.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte hym grace to passe wel without daunger. I shal be enyl content yf he come not to his good desyre.” ¶ The other barons sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4 Ganellon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of a montayne, and there he torned hym ayenst the Paynyms, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynyn of the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde and slays two named murgall, moche treunchante, & atteyned the paynyn vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste: And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of kyng Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd 12 to Rolland: “Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And wete ye wel that in my hert I lone hym. Saue you & charles, I lone none better. Now wold god that I 16 were in hys companye, I shold make grete marterdum on these Paynyms.” Neuertheles he was strongely chaced of the paynyns. But whan they sawe the hoost of Charles, they retorned aback, and wente & 20 tolde the aflatyre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men, wherfore they couneycyld that evry man shold arme hym, & that couneycyl was approued. But whan sortybrant 24 2 knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in menaeyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencyon was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28 come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned’ ten bataylles, and how they dyd’ & were recountrd’ of the puyssaunce of the 32 admyral, where as themperour dyd’ men-naylles, and’ of other maters: capitulo xij

1 i viij. col. 2. 2 i viij. back.
Charles and Balan Prepare for Battle.

Han Ganelon was come to king Charles, the emperor, and he told his message, why he was such: "Syr emperor, I say to you that thy army is not so strong as you thought. I am well happy that I escaped. For I have been chaced."

With xx thousand sarvasys, after that they had assembled and divided his army into ten divisions, and prepared for battle.

And when the battle was near, the emperor, having opened and closed the trumpet, and when he saw they were so many of them, after, as I have said, before, the emperor made ten battalies: In the first, he ordained Richard of Normandy; Duc Reynier of genes had the second,

Ganelon the vth, Alory the fourth, Geoffrey the fift, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seventh, Amandius the viij, Sampson the ix, and of the tenth was conduytour charles the kyng. & in each battle were x thousand men of armes.

When Ballant the admiral saw the kyng comynge, he said to brillant, "who shall be the first that shall entre in to battle with an hundred thousand paynys;"

& sayd that ye he took Charles, he shold not see them. & vpon this the warre was open, & Brullant began to go to a grete bowedraunt tofore the other, and began to crye "haro! haro! where is charles the emperor? thy wyth his euyl chere? loo! I come to thee! thou hast enterpryzed a grete folye whan thou passest the see, & over late thou shalt repent thee. On thys day
shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf. And wythoute faulte thou shalt be yolden to thad-
myral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Them-
peror herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a furye he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, &
atayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake, and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a 8
turke kyng of pyeterelee, and smote hym in the breste that he fyl deed to the erthe, and whan his spere was
broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd; for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At 12
that tyme he bare hym meryallously, that one of the hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that
there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that were lynying were lette by them that were dede. 16
Thenne emonge the paynys there was a turke, named Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt upon the
frensshe men, and attayned fyrst the noble Ieohan of pountayse vpon his sheld, and brake it in pyeces, & 20
smote hym thurf the body that he fyl deed to the erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth huon, and guernyer thanuycen, and after sayd to the frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub-
24 gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychar of 2Normandye had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, &
atayned hym so daungerously that he brake his haw-
berke, and brake his sheld in quarters, & so smote 28
hym, that he fyl down deed wythout ony more reproch-
yng\ & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of
strengthe they passed the vale of Isuue, & came and
fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys payssance, whych 32
was accompanied wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth
an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote. Anone a messager came to the admryral, & tolde hym

\[ k \ j. \]

\[ k \ j, \ col. 2. \]
how brilliant his brother was dede, and many in his companye. Thanne he sente for tempest, his neuewe, & for Sortybrant of conyembres, his moost sypcymen 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe frendes, ye ever ye haue loved me, & haue entencion to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde Charles the kyng. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluyen Balian determines to seek out and engage Charles in single combat.

8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst his persone; & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght see he, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, ye I deye after. For I retche not ye I aduenge me or I 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consydering that state of thadmyral, bygotten to wepe for pylte in comfortyng hym.

How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men:

16 capitulo xij

B Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armèd, and it was blakke as a more, & hym self was grete of body, well membred, & haft hys berde hangyng to the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do sowne hys trompettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, & made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shote wyth bowes turquoys, & al furiously that one ayenst the other goo shote, and make mortal warre, so that the shotte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche people was there slayn that the wayes were empesshed & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke without faynyng, that hys shelde anayllled hym not; hys 4 8 12 16 20 24 28 32
Balan performs great deeds of valour. [II. iii. 13.

hanberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there deede lyke a beest; & after, wyth hys swerde made so grete mandre & slaughter of the fals turkes, yet it was 4 mernaylle. Anone the admiral knewe the deth of Sortybraunt, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte in a rage, and thus sythe sayd: "O Sortybraunt, my special frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I venge not thy deth." with thys wordes he maade his hors to reme vpon þe frenshe men so despytously that whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon of myllan, & slewe hym. thence he dyd grete dommage, and focht that tyme so strongly, that he put to deth wel seuen frenshe men & xiiij Normans moche valyantly, sayeng: "O ye vnhappy frenshe men, I shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spaiyne is comen. in this day shal theost of fraunce be destroyed, & shal neuer repayre home agayn in to fraunce. I shal lede awaye with me the kyngge Charles with his florisshed herd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes." & with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in suche wyse þet they dyd grethy their denoour ayenst the frenshe men. At this medle the counte ganelon, haldre, alory, & geffroy daultenyle, & þat lygnage, dyd gretyly their denoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte space by them were slayn moo than a M paynyns. Thadmyral, moost valyanta of the sarasyns, 2 attayned 28 the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote of hys hors hode that he fyl to the ethe. and after he took hym, & layed hym tofore hym, for to hane born hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganelon sawe hym, notwythstandyng that many of theym were slayn and dede. Neuertheles the frenshe men surmounted the

1 k j, back, col. 2. 2 k ij.
paynysms, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which for lone of Charles dyd say, and made grete dys
comfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth
4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than ffty
other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare
hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that
durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

8  How the peres of Fraunce whyc he were in
the toure came oute whan they sawe the
hoost, & how thadmyral was taken &
holden prysonner : capitulo xiiiij

12 The paynysms & frensshe men, alwaye perseuer-
yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make theuede,
eche one of other, For the multytude of the pay-
nyms was so grete that they myȝt not be dyscomfytet.
16 Whan the barons that wele in the toure sawe the fayt,
& that they that kepte the toure were goon to the
socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche
took an hors of them pât were dede, which ranne at al
20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond,
& sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh
them to the frensche hoost, & made so grete bruyt that
the moost hardyest of the paynysms gaf them waye, &
24 lete them passe, and in espeycyal rolland, for where he
smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at
thys departynge was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn
of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan
28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng
them to be knowne, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde
them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse
pât the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer
32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þe sperhawke than the
sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel
Balan is taken prisoner, and the Saracens put to flight.

Balan invokes his god Mahon (5509) with threats.

He is unhorsed and taken prisoner, (5647) and the battle ends. (5681)

There is great rejoicing over the safety of the knights. (5670)

The army rests some days to recruit their strength.

Hys destructyon by the comyng of the peres that were in p' toure, & cryed wyth an h[y]e voys: "mahon, my god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to so moche honour, thou hast forgotten me! Remembre me now! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the bothe flankes, 2 hede & vsage, and also put out thyn eyen, fals recreaunt god that thou art." he thus sayeng; he was so pursyewed and smyton that he fyl doun vnder 8 his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of hys soner fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduyseyd to bylene in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, & bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle took an ende; and he that wold not be converted was incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial his nuew rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche, & were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd ne expressed the Ioye that was emonge them; & the consolaeyon & reioyceyng of kyng Charles was Inestymable. Thenne they recounted alle thynge what were happened to them, & of thyr daungers and Ieopardyes which they had escaped, & sorowes & lamentacions that they had endured, wherfore Charles and many other wept for pyte. And thys endured many dayes, there where as the hurt men & seek were heeled, & they that were holo passed thyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and Ioye.

¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admonyeyon that was shewed' to hym, wold not be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32 goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

orig. forygoten. 2 k ij, back. 3 k ij, back, col. 2.
WHan charles had al appeased, he took ballant the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to hym in this maner: “ballant, al creatures resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng; knowleche, & al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon is comprysed in hym which gyueth fayth and hope in that whycye he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whycye may not 16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wherfore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the preseruyng of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons, & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, and holy ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formost fader adam, descedended in to thys world, and took humanye in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was al pure and wythoute spotte. And byleue in the artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comandementes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy hanged on the crosse for to redeeme vs fro the paynes of belle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shalt be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes.”

1 k iij.
Thadmyral answered that he wold no thynge do so, and swore that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue Mahon. The emperour holdynge a naked sword, sayde to hym, that ye he foroske not Mahon he shold do put hym to deth. Fyerabras, seyng thyse, kneeld down to cherthe, & prayed hys fader to do as the emperour had sayde. Thadmyral fered the deth, & sayd that he was contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was glad, and dyd make redy a fonte wyth 1fayr water in a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.

& after, whan thadmyral was vneladde, the bysshop 12 demanded hym, sayeng: "Syr ballant, foroske ye mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your trespasses? and lyf ye in Ihesus cryst, the sone of the vyrlyn marye?" whan thadmyral understode these 16 wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshop, & wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had plonged hym therin, ne had not Ogyer haue been, 20 whyche letted hym, & yet notwithstanding, he gaf a grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of hys mouth habondantly. Of thys were al abasshed that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24 Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frendye, Ye see that your fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the outrage that he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but that he must be dede and dysmembred."

Florypes, the daughter of the Admyrall, seyng 32 thys, sayde:

"O Syr Emperour, wherfore 2delaye ye so moche to put thyse deynyl to deth? I retche not though

1 k iiij, col. 2.
2 k iiij, back.
he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye of bourgoyne to myn husbon', whom I haue so moche desyred.” Fyerabras answerd: “fayr suster, ye haue grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a good cristen man, & were baptysed and blyene in Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is of hys ymage, whiche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold & stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal do to vs grete loye, & of your enemyes ye shal make frendes.”

20 Ballant answerd: “fool & glouton that thou art, speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reason! I shal neuer blyene in hym that deyed V. C. yere a-goo, & acursed be he that putteth in hys blyene that he is arysen fro deth to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles, that fool,” whan fyerabras had al understonden hym, he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys playsyr, “For by good' ryght he ought to deye.” Anon themperour demanded who wol not slee ballant, the vn-mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys heed, & Fyerabras pardonned hym gladly. Thenne after this, florypes sayd to Rollan that he shold accomplyshe his promisses by-twene hyr and guy of bourgoyn. rolland answerd: “ye say trouth,” and

Balan calls him a fool, and declares he will never do so. (5845)

Charles asks who will kill the souldan. (5850)

Ogier volunteers, and smites off his head. (5865)
Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty.

Guy is told to say:
"Syr, ye remembre wel what
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to
hyr." Guy answers that he was redy to do al that he
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was
despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She
beyling there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whych was a
ryght whyte and wel forme, so playsaunt and amorous for
the formosyte of hyr persone, that ever man merueyled.
For she had hyr eyen as clere as two sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wyl 12
stondying in the myddes of the vysage; hyr chokes
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compased as it
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;
hyr heyr shynyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16
accumuled that it henge bynethe hyr knees; hyr mouth
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a
small longe nekke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhunced 20
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and
so amorous, that she smote the hertes of many, and
enflamed theyr entencyon whyth concupiscence, and
speccially of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24
aneye & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyne for
the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptysed. And charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,
wythout chauncyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedde them,
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32
And so thyd said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras
wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all 3 that

1 k iiiij. 2 orig. kueces. 3 k iiiij, col. 2.
II. iii. 16. FLORIPAS GIVES THE SACRED RELICS TO CHARLES. 199

1. ever gye shold haue, he shold holde it of charles. After thys, the feest of the wedlyng and espousayles endured viij dayes. And charles abode there two monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured.

II. How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to themperour, and how they were proued by myracle, & of the retournyng of Charles, and of the ende of thyss book. [capitulo xvj]

Harles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in the contreye adiacent, that he that wolde not be baptyzed was put to deth, and so serched oueral. And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and sayd to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue crowned you and maad you quene of thys contree. I haue accomplysshed your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn, your husband, And more ouer ye be baptyzed, and in waye of saucyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And I shal lene with hym xx M of my subjettes, to the ende that the paynyms be alwaye in drede; but ye haue not yet shewed to me nothyng of the holy relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answered: "Syr emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and thenne she brou3t forth the chest in to Affryque.

Charles reminds Floripas of all he had done for her, (5923)

Floripas brings him the coffer containing them, (5956)

which Turpin reverently opens.

¶ Themperour knelde down on bothe hyis knees, and enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst he shewed the precyous crowne with whycyhe Ihesu Cryst was crowned wyth, whycyhe was of pryckyng "orig. caner. 2 k iiiij, back. "
The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, which remains unsupported in the air, emitting a delightfull odour.

The relics are proved to be miracles; and the piece of Charles's amery, the bishop certeyned to the people that was present, that it was the crown of Ihesu Crist, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euer man honoured it devoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that everyche mernaylle. And after, the bysshop took the naylles by whyche god had hys handes & feet perceyed, and prevned them as he had proved the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode in the ayer myraucously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly God in sayeng: "O lorde, god eternal, whychast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemys Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I hane so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and prayers. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and hane thys precious tresour, whan it shal be conteyned therin." The bysshop blesseyd alle the people there in makeynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them devoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them on a ryche cloth of golde denoutely. And when they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them denoutely and put them in hys glone; and after, he beyng in purpos in retorne in to hys contrey, he throwe the glone to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & when Charles was a litel withdrawn he took hede of hys glone, &

1 orig. peyle.  
2 orig. handes.  
3 k iiiij, back, col. 2.
THE CONTEXTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

IIII. i. i.

4 returned and sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale pyeces of the sayd relyques were,—abode hangyng in thayer without susteynyng of ony thynge. Thenne was this myracle seen eydently, and al thys was shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon

8 in bylenyng & adouryng the sayd relyques. And these thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnderstonden in the best partye & sygnyfycacion that I can or wold say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that

12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng. And as for the book ensuyng, it shal make mension of somme bataylles, and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I haue tofore spoken al alonge.

16 Here begynneth the iij book, whyche conteyneth two partyes, by the chapytres folowyng declared'.

The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiiij chapytres, and speketh of the warres made in spayne, and' of two mer-uyllous geauntes.

How Saynt Iames appyered' to Charles, and how, by the moyen and' the conduyte of the sterres, he went in to galyce, & what cytees he subdued: ca.

Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken moche payne for to mayntene the name of god for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he had gotten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

\[ k v. \]
\[ k v, col 2. \]
and to devote himself to religion;

but in a vision he sees a line of stars, pointing to Galicia.

A man appears to him, who declares he is St. James, the Apostle of Galicia, and reproaches him for not recovering that country from the Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng his maker of his grace that he had gwyn to hym in surmountyng hys enemies, Neuertheles on a nyght it happe hym that he byhelde the heuen, & sawe a quanctye of sterres in orde tendyng alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they began at the see of fryseldon in passyng bytwene alemayn and ytalyc, bytwene Fraunce and guyane, and passed ryght the sayd sterres by gascoyne, bascle, Nauarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd and maad cristen. And after, the ende of the sayd sterres thus goyng in orde, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of the holy apostle was, he nat knowing the propre place. Every nyght charles byhelde the waye of the sayd sterres, and thought moche contynuelly what thys myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In one nyght emong the other that charles thought on thys waye, a man appyered to hym in vysyon, whyche was so fayr, so playshante, and so shyntyng; that it was 20 mernaylle; whyche sayd to hym: “what doest thou, my fayre sone?” Charles, beyng al rauysshed, answerd: “who arte thou, fayr syr?” That other answerd: “I am James, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the evangelyst, & am he whom god chaas to preche the crysten fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and of galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyd put to deth by swerde; and my body abydeth emonge the sarasyns, whyche have entreated it vylaynsly, & lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I merueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and consynderyd that thou hast conquerd so many regyones, townes, & cytees in the world. wherfore I do the to wete, that lyke as god hath chosen the, and made the
superior in worldly puysaunce aboue al other kynges & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that lynen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of the sterres, to deluyer my londe fro the hande of the mesereault sarasyns and enemies of crystendom. And to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what place thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the 8 sterres by dynynge magnyfycence. And for to obteyne the more Ioye & greter glorye in heuen, by haultayn and grete puysaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn enemyes, & in that same place thou shalt make and doo edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shalt com

the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe & pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conservae the place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell.” Thus in thys maner appyered thre tymes saynt James to the emperour Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym was panpylone, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner to confounde it. Theyne Charles knewe not what to do, but to praye god and saynt James, for whom he went, that in the vertu of hys name he myght take that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: “Fayr lord god, my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thy contre for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysshe and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy saynt James, by the reueclacyon of whome I am in thys

He promises him success, and bids him raise a church to his name, as a perpetual memorial.

After this vision had appeared thrice, Charles starts with his army for Galicia.

He besieges Pampluma in vain for three months, and then invokes in prayer the help of St. James.

1 k v, back, col. 2. 2 k vj.
Pampluna is captured by a miracle, [III. i. 2.]

Journeye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleuyng peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnynge may the better determyne the ende of myn entencyon." 4

Assone as Charles had fynysshed his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merucillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyld alle in pyeces; and after, charles and his host entred in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold be baptysed & byleue in god wythoute fyctyon, was saued and put a-parte, and who sayd the contrarye, was forthwhyth put to deth. Al the people of that contreye, when they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, tourned in to Ruyne at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradyctyon came and yielded them to the mercy of kyng charles. And thus many were baptysed, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned, and al the contreye reduc^ed to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelyte of the emperour charles, and brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute any other gaynsayeng in sygne of seygnourye.

Of the cytees goten in espayne by charles, & how somme were by hym destroyed'. [capitulo iij.]

After that charles had the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt James, where he dyd hys deuocyon, and made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in pe lond whych was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and there fyxed 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called petronium; & thanked god and saynt James, that by theyr suffrancce he was comen so ferre wythoute any contra-
dyctyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no ferther. And in that londe who that wold byleue

1 k vj. col. 2.
in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who
that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after
Charles wente from one see to that other, and them he
4
gate in galyce xijj cytees, emonge whome compostelle
was them the lest. In espayne he had xvj grete
townes & stronge, emonge whome 1 was onsea, in which
were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toum named:
8
petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that
had themne cours. Also another cyte named attentjua,
where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was
dyceyple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
12
was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype
fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute faylljng.
Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette
16
to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe
of maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,
the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe
of byscoys, the londe of baseles, the londe of palargyens,
20
and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and
mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not
wynne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he
layed sylege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.
24
and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw
that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not
wynne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to
saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he
28
had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte
only. hys oryson was herde, soo that 2 the walles fyl
down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche
wyse, pat neuer man dwelled therin after, and after it
32
sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water,
In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.
Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiiij
that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

1 k vj, back.  
2 k vj, back, col. 2.
Therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursed, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame.

Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton doun, and of the condyceyons and sygnes therof: ca.  

W

Charles destroys all the idols;

but at Salancadys was a great idol,

kept so by devils that none could destroy it,

and which no Christian dare approach.

It stood on a large stone, richly carved,

Han Charles had doen in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thydoles and other symylaures that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machommete in the tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahommet in thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therin a legyon of deuylles, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylles, that noo persone lyuyng coude by strength the destroye it, ne put it doun. In suche wyse that yf ony crystyn man came nyghte for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Asoone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontyuent it was deed. The stone vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylyly of grete and rych facyon, the whyche was enhauwed vpryght, not without grete crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

---

1 *orig.* and was.  
2 k vij.
III. i. 4.] WHICH MIRACULOUSLY LETS FALL ITS KEY.

grete, & alway vpward it was lasse; and that stone was so hyc as a crowe myght flee: vpon whyche stone was thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorye, after than-semblance of a man stondyng vpynght on his feet, & had hys face torned to the south, & helde in his ryght honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certeyned for trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce sholde be borne,

& in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lette falle the keye, whych shold be a sygne pat the kyng of fraunce shold conquere them. So theynne in the tyme that the noble kyng Charles regned in spayne, for to brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lette the keye falle down to the grounde. And when the sarasyns sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer, and precious stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten men shold no thynge fynde therof, & they al wente in to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of the kyng.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce, and of dyuers other whyche Kyng Charles founded: capitulo iiiij

Charles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte of golde, of syluer, and of precious stones, of many kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of cytees that was gyuen to hym as lonk.

Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquered of the townes and contreyes of Spayne aforesayd. Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departynge; and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

1 k vij, col. 2. 2 k vij, back.
founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes sufficyent, and gaf to them synguler seygnourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of precyous clothes, & al thynges necessarie & apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfycal. also of bokes, vestymentes, challyces, & other holy escryptures. And of the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edeyle these chyrches folowyng:

I Fyrst, at Aeon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chyrche of our lady; and though it be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the town of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mouyte of martres. & aboue the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteries, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd it, and other 24 maters: capitulo

After Charles's return to France,

Akyng sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puysaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other flekke. And in shorte tyme the tydnynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abassshed

& angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.
wherfore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went theryder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland, & they ceased not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whycye had doon thys feat. when charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, 1 and 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold deluyer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand k, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng the tentyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whycye Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of p sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to sane them self. The thyrd day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences, and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles was contente, and there vpon they made redy their peple, and somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye their harnoys, and sette

1 k viij. 2 k viij, col. 2.
The Saracens are routed, but with great loss.

By a miracle it is shown which of the French soldiers should be killed in the battle.

From their spears springs up a great wood.

Two and 50 knights are slain.

But the Saracens are put to flight.

Reinforcements come to Charles.

Whereupon Aigolant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to France.

Their tentes nygh a ryuer named eeye, and pyght there their spere, euyn in the place where as the bodyes of saynt faconde and saynt premetyf rested, where after was made a chyrche devotely founded, and also a stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in the place where the spere were pyght, our lord shewed a grete myrracle. For of them that shold deye there and be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, their 8 spere on the morn were founden al grene, floressed and leued, whycbe was a precedent sygney that they whyche shold deye shold haue the luye in heuen.

Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted, and they were grene, floresshed and leued, Avhyche was a precedent sygney that they whyche shold deye shold haue the luye in heuen.

If each man took his owne and cut of the bowes & 12 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted, and they were grene, floresshed and leued, Avhyche was a precedent sygney that they whyche shold deye shold haue the luye in heuen.

The horses made, whycbe dyc theyr 16 dcuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whycbe was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt crysteyn men were slayne, And the other was slayne due Myllon, fader to Eoulland. Also that same day the 20 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a fote he maad grete mordre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse, and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dreyng, the euenynge, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiiij marquyse of ytalye, accompanied wyth iiiij M stronge fyghtyng men & chosen. wherfore Aigolant, assone as he knewe of theyr comyng, he fledd and wythdrewe hym over the see toward hys contree, but they myst not for hast bere with them al theyr tresours, wherfor frannece was euryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

And when charles sawe his departyng he came wyth al hys rychesse in to frannece, and theyme, duryng seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the servyce and oflyce of k viij, back.
the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encreace the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the officees and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd reduce rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Just warre, and' how Charles in habyte dys-symyled' spake to hym, and' of other maters: capitulo vj

Aigolant collects an immense army.

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

211

1 k viij. back, col. 2. 2 l j.
Aigolant invites Charles to visit him unattended.

Charles sets out with 2000 knights, whom he leaves, except 16, near the city.

He himself, in disguise and with only one attendant, enters the city, and presents himself as a messenger from Charles, to say he had come with only 40 attendants.

Aigolant replies that he will go and meet the French king.

trustily, with a few peple, promysyngr to hym for to gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and precyous stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he wel by experyence, and also to thende when he knewe hym that he myght in the ware flee hym. when kyng charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour and of grete strength. And when he was fourre myle nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte, by cause to wete yf the multytyde of peple were departed, soo that he shold not be deceuyed. Neuertheles 16 vpon thys mountayne he lefte hys people secretly, and took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a messager, and took one knyght onely with hym, whyche bare hys spere & swerde and boeler vnder hys mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was brought tofore aigolant the geant. And when he was tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied wyth foutry knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes, withoute moo, yf thou wylt accompylysshe and holde that thou hast promysed." Aigolant sayd to hem that they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles had knowne the geant, and after vysyted the towne, for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer it when he shold come agayn, & sawe al the kynges

1 j. col. 2.
III. i. 7.] Charles captures Agennes, but Aigolant escapes. 213

Charles, having spied out all the city, departs.

Aigolant, with 7000 men, follows him,
but Charles escapes.

How Charles, accompanied with moche peple, returned in to the place aforesayd & toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters:

[capitulo] vij

After that charles was returned in to fraunce he assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte of agenne, & assyeged it there by grete facyon, the space of vij monethes. Aigolant was therin & many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan Aigolant & the grete lordes of his companye sawe pat they myght not endure, they maade hooles & caues vnder therth for tescape oute secretly: in that maner they came out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which raine by the cyte, named goronna, and so they saued them self.

The next day after, whan there was noo grete resystence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete tryumpe & puysaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other, seynge that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aigolant was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it he came thyder & assayled it, & sente to hym to delyuer over the cyte. aigolant answered that he wold not so doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a

1 1 j, back. 2 1 j, back, col. 2.
Charles utterly routs the Saracens.

Aigolt proposes a general battle.

Those of the Christians who were destined to die are again pointed out by a miracle.

The Saracens are utterly defeated.

Batayll, & he that should wyne the bataylle should be lord of pe toun, & so they assygned the day of the bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel thalabour & a ryner called caranthu, some of the 4 crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, especially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morn they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8 & ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche voyous of this myrace, and raught not for to deye for pe cristen fayth in mayntenynge the name of god. After that they cutte of theyr speres and, wente to 12 bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo than iiij M whyche were saue in heuen; & that tyme the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16 and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the kynge of Agabye [&] the kynge of bugye, merueyllous myghty sarasyns.

Of the vertuous operacions that charles made whan he was retorned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in hys companye, & of theyr pyssaunce: ca. viij

The bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and came in to pampylone, and sent to kynge charles that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys peple, and made an open maundement thourgh out al Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabelyons shold be deluert accordingly to the lawe, that wold goo with 1 iij.
hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysomners that were in fraunce, he delyuered them al out of pryson, & to al them that shold hawe ben delyuered to deth for felonys, 'murdre, or treason, he pardonne
them \& gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poore peple
that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good
largely, & them that were euyll clad, he clothed them
8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he
peased them \& accorded; Alle them \&t were dys-
heryted \& put oute from theyr lynedode he restored al
to them; Alle pe peple\(^1\) that myght bere armes he
12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones
he made knyghtes, \& al them that were in hys Indyg-
nacyon \& pryued \[t\]ro hys lune, \& bannyshed\(^2\) for the
loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, \&
16 made pees with every man. and thenne he was four-
nyshed of moo than an C thousand\(^3\) men wel fyghtyng,
wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innume-
ral. And fro to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,
20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: "I, Turpyn, archebysshop
of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good
courage to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydelis, sarasyns,
with myn owne handes." \(^4\) Wyth Charles was
24 Roulland\(^5\) of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys
syster, dame Berthe, \& of Duke Myllon, wyth foure
thousand\(^6\) fyghtyng\(^7\) men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of
duc Reyner, with iiij M fyghtyng\(^7\) men: Aristagius,
28 kyng\(^8\) of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng\(^7\) men;
Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng,
Engelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Augustus Cezar had ordeyned, wyth the byturyciens, the
32 monyques, pictynys, scenaetonens, and Elogysmes,
 cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: \& he eam
with iiij M horsmen \(^2\)good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng\(^9\)
of bordeloy, with iiij M men; Salamon, felow of estok;

\(^1\) 1 ij. col. 2. \(^2\) 1 ij. back.
Aigolant proposes a truce and a conference.

Burgundy, Lorraine, and other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, due of bauyere, wyth x M fyghtyng men; Hoel of Nauntes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgeois, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, due of bourgeois, with x M; Garyn, due of lorayne, & many other; and Charles hafl of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The execerete of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght payssaunt kyng of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the freusshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more.

Of the tryews of Charles & of Aigolant, and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore aigolant was not baptysed: capitulo ix

Aigolant, frightened at the numbers of the French, proposes a conference.

It is agreed to leave the question of religion to a trial of arms between equal numbers.

T

He whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16 lerned at Toulete the langage of sarayns, and spake it whan he wold. Aigolant, thyss scanted and grete Lord, coude not absteyne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylyone, and tryews was 1 maak bytwene them. For Aigolant consdydyd the multytude of hys people and the payssaunces of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the 24 erystyn peple, but he thought that the god of erystyn people was more certayn and trewe then the god of the paynyms; but er he wold deyclene fro the worshippyn of hys goddes, he had desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynyms ayeunst the nombre of erystyn men. And he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold obteyne the vctorye vpon others peple, that his god were holden and worshipped, 32 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle
III. i. 9.]

AIGOLANT AGREES TO RECEIVE BAPTISM.

shold be of noo valure, renye, and reputed for nought. And as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty sarasyns were shayn. And after they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thought he wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C, but Anone the sarasyns were overcomen & slayn. Thys geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sent a thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wythoute makyng grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone slayn and put to deth. Thus he was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sent a thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wythoute makyng grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe than the lawe of the paynyms and sarasyns, and thus he was enclyned to the cristen fayth, & dyspose: hym to receyue baptym on the morne without fayntysye; and here vpon he demanded trefews and surete for to goo & come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, when charles was at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were vayllerous and soo grete as it was in armes and in bataylles. And also he came prynyepally for to be baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete magnysfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and grete prynces. Other in habyte of channons & monkes; & asked so that he was certefyed of every ordre, and the cause of theyr estate, and after that he sawe in a parte of y® halle syttyng on the groudke, xiiij poure persone, which dyne: & ete as other dyde, for

20 Christians engage as many Saracens, and slay them;

and after 40 overcome 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000 Christians slay 1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is convinced, and agrees to receive baptism.

He asks to see Charles at meat with his lords.

He sees 13 poor men, sitting on the ground at dinner.
Charles of custom would not take his repaste tyl he had xij pore men in the worshippe of our lord and of his xij appostles, & he toke hede how these pore men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght pore habyte, & dyned al soroufully, & he demaundeder what people they were. Charles answerde & sayde: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in honore of hym & his xij appostles that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aygolant said: "certeynye he serueth euyl hys lord y* receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good poynt & wel arrayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the seruantes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed ayenst y° colde, & ben withdrawn ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his messagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whycye thou hast sayd to me to be goo& holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe." & herof aygolant was all moeued & troubled in his entendement, & he beyng put ou alle fro hys purpose, toke leue of the 1 kyng & retorned to hys peple, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to be gyne warre ageyne on y° morne more stronge than euuer he had doon tofore.

Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men founden dede by myracle: [ca.]

Han charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptysse hym he was moche loyous, but whan he retorned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & took aduys upon the pour men whycye he sayder were
messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to their mayster, & the emperour re-
membred wel that the peple of god ought to be re-
ceyued honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in the excercyte he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them 8 mete largely. And took suche custome in hym self that he faylled not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to 12 fyght layenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns, that the crysten men were empeshed and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore Aygolant, seyng the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothing to deye, aduaunced so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therin.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of Cordube sauned them self with somme of their subgettes. After 24 thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to have gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed retorne, And when they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupys-
escence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vycorye, and to god dysplaysaunte. On the morne tydnynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

1 l iij, back, col. 2. 2 orig. wherfor. 3 orig. and aduaunced.
The king of Navarre challenges Charles.

He accepts, and prays to God to point out which of the Christians are destined to die. This being shown to him, he locks them up in his chapel, and goes to battle without them. On his return he finds them all dead.

Charles defeats the King of Navarre. He specyally of aygola, vnto the pynce of Nauarre named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt, & so trustyng in God, when he fought for the crysten fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles put hym self to prayer, and prayed God deuoutely that it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold dye in that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan every man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. 12 whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had compassyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyauncie of theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare their signe & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16 after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they should not take deth that day; and thenne wyth al his other hoste he went ayenst host of the pynce furre, but it was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour came in to hys oratorye vyctoryous vpon hys enemyes, and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede & expyrede, & thenne knewe he wel that alle they that 24 were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to be receyued in to heuen with glorye & crowne of marterdom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put hym in payne to escheewe the passage of whyche he is not maystre.

† Of feragus the merucyllum geaunt, how he bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught wyth hym: capitulo xj.
After that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges cam to the admiral of babylome, the which had a geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of golas, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst charles themperour. For his puyssaunce was redoubted:

8 thurgh the world, & the sayd Ferragus cam vnto the cyte of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous.

12 For he doubted neyther spfre ne swerde, ne arowe, ne other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl inyty men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thiys was knowne thiys geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn gulier persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche never had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogyer the danoys.

20 but whan the geant sawe hym alone on the felde, without makyng of ony semblauhte of warre, he came alone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande & put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym ony harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym, than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght of thiys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes & thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was thre palmes longe. After that Ogyer was borne thus awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Ferragus sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other. Charles was abasshed, and sent twye ne other, that is to wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt took that one wyth the ryght honde and that other

1 iiii, back. 2 orig. wyght.
Roland asks leave to fight the giant.

Charles reluctantly gives his consent.

Ferragus lifts Roland up with one hand, and lays him on his horse before him.

Roland, by an effort, overthrows the giant.

Roland kills the Saracen's horse, and wounds Ferragus in the arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them 1 bothe twyene in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng; that every man myght see. yet after charles sent other twyene, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or 4 contradyctyon. when Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende ony persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was pryace of al thececysyte of Charles, was euyl con- tente of thys that the geant was vycetoryous, & came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrayned to gyne to hym lycence, 12 & Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth his ryght hande lyke the other, and the geant layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. when Roulland sawe that he was 16 taken & borne awaye soo vylaynslly he took a grete 2 courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, & to be in hys ayde, and tornd hym ayenst Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20 ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and euerche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe 3 hys swerde durandal 24 and came ayenst the geant, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynynms hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28 hys swerde for to smyte Roulland, & had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte yp hys arm to to hone smytyn Roulland, Roulland anunced hym self and smote the geant vpon 32 the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to hone smytyn

1 iiiij, back, col. 2.  
2 orig. gete.  
3 l v.
III. i. 12.] OF THE DUEL BETWEEN ROLAND AND FERRAGUS. 223

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe two on fote, whych wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght wyth wytherv fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the howre of none: wherfore they bothe were wery, and took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne, and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute hors: and here uppon eche of them went vn-to hys lodgys.

How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by what ’moyen Feragus was slayn by Roul-

land': capituloxij

The next day folowyng erly, Rolland and Feragus came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng worth, for rolland made pronysyon of a grete staffe or clubbe, ry3t longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt; but he myght nowher hurtne hym. & also he smote hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesche. And in this maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the howre of mylday. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of Roland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Roland was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete stone and layed it vnder hys hee, to the ende that he myght the better slepe and reste at hys case. And after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked, he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd, Roland's horse is killed.

Being both weary, they leave off fighting for the day.

Next morning the duel is renewed.

Roland takes with him only a great staff.

At noon Ferragus is tired, and wishes to sleep a while.

Roland makes him comfortable.

He asks him how it is he cannot by any means wound him.

1 v. col. 2.
Roland tells Ferragus that he is vulnerable only in the navel.

The Saracen inquires about the doctrines of Christianity.

Roland tells him, and how that all that are baptised shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes to settle the question of religion by arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in 1 soo wyse." The gaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym: "I may not be slayn, but by the navel." whan Roland herde that he made sembliaunte that he unnderstod hym not. 4 After Ferragus daemunda hym what was hys name, and of what lygnage he was. Roland sayd to hym: "I am named Roland, and am nynew of charles, the ryght myghty Emperor." & Ferragus asked of hym 8 what lawe he helde. Roland answered: "I holde the cristen fayth by the grace of god." Ferragus sayd: "what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to whyche Rolland answered: "It is trouthe after god 12 almystly had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader adam, which was dysobeyssantaunt to hys commandements; the world was Juge in erthe wythoute haunyt of beatytude, ne of felcyte; and long tyme 16 after the sone of god, the second persone of the Trynyte, remembred hym of the value of the soule, the whiche is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and took our humanyte and suffred grousus passyon of 20 paynes. And he beynge in thys world hath gyuen ensecnements and stablyssed constytacyons for to same vs, & pryncypally who blyeneth in hym & in hys werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed. After thys 24 mortel lyf he shall be saved in heuen: and, loo! thys is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye." And after that Ferragus had made to hym many qwestyons in the fayth, and that Roland had answered to 28 hym honourably in every peynyte, Ferragus said in this manere: "thou art crysten, and wylt maynten the fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym, & holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs twyne that 32 shall be vamppyssheft & overcome, late hys lawe be holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of hym that is vycctoryous late it be holdeyn for good & 1 orig. im. 2 1 v, back. 3 1 v, back, col. 2.
III. i. 12.] ROLAND STABS FERRAGUS MORTALLY IN THE NAVEL.

treve, and that it be enterely kepe and observed." The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, & accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was ready to fight. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Ferragus lyft vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malcyously, and Rolland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde, and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym down under hym. Rolland, consyderyng that he myght not flee ne escape, he calleth in hys hert devoutelie the name of Ihesus, and yielded hym to goode & to the vyrgyn marye: & he anon reproysed suche strengthe & might that he aroos a lytel, & mohtyly repugned the geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte under hym, and hym moche quyckly and subtylly he sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the nayyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that he myght to thooost of charles. Anone as feragus felte hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye & lowde, that alle they that were in that place were afeare & abasshed of hym crye, & he sayd: "O Mahomet, my god, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger." with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland was komen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthywart the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns that bare Feragus, and entred in to the cyte, and so moche dyd that the geaunt was dede, and after came in to the pryson valyauntly, and took out Ogyer, Regnaunt, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

1 1 vi.
THE SARACENS, BY A STRATAGEM, PUT THE FRENCH TO FLIGHT.

How Charles went to Cor-dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon: ca.

A After thys aforesayd, the kyng^ Corbude and the kyng of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puysaunce. And when they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad a moche subtyl and wyde thynge. For before the Sarayns that were on horsback they had ordained men on fote, whyche had vysieres counter-feyt of all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deiiylles, for to deceyue the crysten men; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thebre of the bataylle they began to sowne autV make suche a bruyt, that asone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to fle, disrenge & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde theyr horses, but by force they must fle and wythdrawe them. Charles denysed a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couerf theyr eyen wyth clothes, And stopped theyr eres, to the ende that they shold not see ne here the sarasyns dysguysed & coun-terfayted. And when they came to bataylle in this manere they spared not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday; but yet they were not al vyauynquysshed, For they had a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and make grete emppesshement to theyr enemies. And this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on Payne of deth noo persone, shold retourne, ne goo

1) vi. col. 2.  2) vi, back.  3) orig. thre-vpon.
aback for no thynge as long as the standarḍ stode vp-
ryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche
puysauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to
the standarḍ, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it
asondre: and ane as the sarasyns sawe that they
fledde, & mony of yᵉ paynyms were slayn and dide.
& on the morne after the towne was delynede vnto
Charles by the lord of the towne, whyche coude not
resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym hae
hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the towne for-
to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne
Charles ordeyneḍ in spayne certayn of hys barons to
kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne
make to it warre. For he was alwaye vyctoryous of
his enemyes by the puysaunce that he ledde, and also
by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryneyppally by the
grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys
subgettes.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was
halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, & the
chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiiij

Charles the noble emperour, after that he had
put and sette good estate and good warde in
spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people.
And when he was there, suche cristen men as he there
fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,
and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other
maner of peple, suche as he fonden vytrwe and dys-
obesyante to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth,
or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and
bannysshed them. And thenne thorugh al the cytees
of spayne he ordeyneḍ bysshops, relygyous, and other
1 orig. tonn. 2 l vj. back, col. 2.
peple of the chyrche, & made many constytucyons, synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt James he made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, prynces, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fyndelyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyee. And accordyng to the same the arche-

Turpin consecrates the Church of St. James.

Charles appoints the payment of tithes to the church,

and orders that all consecrations and coronations shall take place there.

The body of St. John is deposite on the right side, and that of St. James on the left.

and ordains that all the bishops of Spain shall be subject to the bishop of St. James.

Charles makes regulations for the Church of St. James.

1 orig. constytucyons. 2 l vij. 3 orig. amuel.

1 l vij, col. 2.
hyr two soones, glorieuse frendes of our lord Jhesu Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two soones shold sytte, one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,

whyche was themen accomplysshed and terynyed. & theryfore in the world ben thre syges and chyrches pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte, defende and mayntene wyth all thyr myght. ¶ That 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephesym of saynt Johan the evangelyst, And the chyrche of Saynt James in galyce. And yf ony demaundde the cause of these thre places and syges pryncipal of cri-
tynte, the cause is ynoough apperante. These thre places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners may haue thyr recours to them for tamende thyr lyues, and put 4awaye thyr synnes, & obteyne pardon
16 and forgynenes. Fyrst these iiij apostles, that is to say, Saynt Peter, Saynt Johan, & saynt James, haue pre-cede4d all the other in the companye of Jhesu Cryst when he was in thys world; & haue ben called to hys 20 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hyn. Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue conversed and contynued thyer lyues, and where thyr bodies resten, oughten to be honoured and to be 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was the fyrst and moost contynued wyth hyn. The church of Rome is the head, because St. Peter, St. John, and St. James were the chief of the Apostles.

because St. Peter, St. John, and St. James were the chief of the Apostles.

28 after saynt Johan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel ‘In principio erat verbum & cedere,’ And by his holy prechyng hath converted thynfydellys to the holy 32 crysten faythe. And also saynt James, whyche haif grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the memorye of them to be thorugh the vnyuersal world.”

¶ That

1 vij, back.
In this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named Marsurrius, and that other Bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by that myral of babylonne in to spayne, the whyche were under kyng Charles, & made to hym syne of loue and of subjectyon, and went by hys commande-ment holyly and under the shadowe of decepeyon. Themperour, seynyng that they were not crysten, and for to gete seygnourye oner them, he sente for Ganelon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptysye them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelyte of their contre. Ganelon, the traytre, went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, and other rychesses, & iiiij honderd hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys in sygne of loue and of obeyssance. and after they gaf to ganelon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer, sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of charles yf he myght doo it.

1 vij. back. col. 2. 2 viij.
Thenne ganelon was surpysed wyth thys fals auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte that is in persones, for to hawe golde or syluer & other rychesses, & made a pacte and coenaunte wyth the sarasyns for to betraye hys lord, hys neyghbours, & crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them of thenterpryse; but I merueyll le moche of ganelon, which made thys treason, wythoute to have *cause coloured!* Juste.

O wycked* Ganelon, thou were comen of noblesse, & thou hast doon a werke vlyaynnous: thou were rych, & a grete lord, and for money thou hast betrayed thy mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to goo to ye sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other, and for the fydelte that was thought in the, thou hast consented to trayson, and allone hast commysed Infydelte. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of a fals wylle plunged in thabysme of auaryce? Thy naturel souerayn lord, Roulland, Olyuer, & the other, what haine they doon to the? yf thou haine a wycked hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou louedest whan to al crysten men thon hast ben traytre?

was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capytayn ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende sheweth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god dys-obeyaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the granade put to vttre ruyne and destructyon. Thus in thys manere ganelon brought golde and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and other rychesses, as tofore he had enterpryse. Whan charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in good entent and equyte and wythout barat. The grete

1. orig. hane.
2. l viij, col. 2.
He takes the gold and silver himself, and gives the wine to his knights.

Charles, persuaded by Ganelon, sends his homewar to.

Marsurius and Bellegandus lay an ambush in Roncesvalles, which falls on the French.

The fight lasts all day.

At night the French soldiers get drunk on the wine.

Then 30,000 Saracens fall on them,

lords & knyghtes take the wyn for them, and charles took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people took the hethen wymmen. Themperour 1 ga phê consente to the wordes of ganelon, For he spake moche wsely, & and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganelon dyd hym to understande that the kynges aforesayd wold become crysten and be baptysed, and swore fydelyte to the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland & Olyuer & the moost speycal of hys subgettes wyth a thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rouncyuale. Thenne the kynges Marsuryus & Bellegandus, after the counceyl of ganelon, wyth fifty thousand saraysns were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they put xx M saraysns, and in that other they put xxx thousand saraysns. In the vaunte garde of charles were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were assaylled wyth xx thousand saraysns, and maad warre in suche wyse that they were constrained to withdrawe them; For fro the mornyng vnto the houre of tyerce they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to reste theym. Neuertheles, they dronken wel of the good swete wyn of the saraysns moche largely, And after many of them that were dronke went & laye by the wymmen saraysnoys, & also wyth other that they had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god was that they shokd al be dede, to thende that their martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr saucyon & purgyng of their synne. For anone after the thirty thousand saraysns cam that were in the second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

1 viij, back.  2 1 viij, back. col. 2.
that they were al deder and slayn, Except Roulland, bauldueyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and deder with speres: somme slayn, somme rosteck, and other quartreck, and submyseyck to many tormentes. And whan thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganelion was with charles, and also tharchebysshopp Turpyn, whych knewe nothying of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche supposed that they alle hadd be destroyed and put to deth. Of the languysshe that was comynge to Charles, he wyste not, how sone it was comynge:

Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how

Roulland' was hurt wyth fourere speres mortalley after that al his peple were slayn:

capitulo:

THe bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche sharpe, whan Roulland, whych was moche wery, retourced he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn moche fyers & blacke as boyllii pytche, and anone he took hym at theatere of a wode & bonde hym to a tree straytely, wythoute doinge to hym any more harme, and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the hoost of the sarasyms, And the crysten men that were fledde: & saw grete quantyte of paynymys. Wherfore anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche lowde. And wyth that noysse cam to hym an hundred crysten men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo. And whan they were come to hym he retourced to the sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland helde hys swerd over hym, sayeng that he shold deye, yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus, & yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn was contente, and swore, that he shold gladly do it for to saue his lyf; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures a Saracen, whom he ties to a tree, and afterwards compels to point out to him Mar- surius.
the place where they sawe the paynyms, and shewed to Rolland Whych was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus, as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than any of the other, & gaf to hym so greate a stroke wyth durandal vpon the hede that he clefte hym & hys hors in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde & that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns were soo troubled and abasshed of the myght and puys-saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, & thenne abode the kyngne Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke. Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came to hym and put hym to deth Incontinent. And alle the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in thys recountre were dolorously slayn & put to deth, Except onely baulduyn & Thyerry, whyche for fere fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete spere he was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mortally. And not withstandyng these greuous hurte & wounds, yet, maugre al the sarasyns, he sprange out of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he myght. Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people, returned in to another coutrey wyth hys peple moche hastely. And themperour Charles had themne passed the montayne of Ronceuyle, and knewe nothyng of these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

1 m j, col. 2. 2 m j, back. 3 orig. coutreye.
ROLAND BIDS FAREWELL TO DURANDAL.

How Rolland deyed’ holyly, after many martyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely, & of the complaynte maad’ for hys swerde durandal: capitulo iiij

Roland, although greatly exhausted by loss of blood,

struggles nearly to Saragossa,

where he lies down.

He looks with grief on Durandal,

and weeping, bids it farewell.

1 m j, back, col. 2.
who shall have the after me? who someuer hath the
shall never be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shall have good? 
fortune. Alas! what shall I more ouer say for the,
good? swerde? many sarasyns have ben destroyed by 4
the; thynfydels and mysercayntes have ben slayn by
the; the name of god? is exalted? by the; by the is
made the path of 1sanement. O, how many tymes
have I by the auenger? thyniurye made to god? O, 8
how many men haue I snyton and cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort and my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12
of noo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye
for sorrowe." After that Roland? had wepte ynough, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded 2 in hym self to breke it, 16
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iiij tymes wythoute hurtyng? ony thynge the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse broke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and 20
coude do nomore thereto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and snowned & blewe it
moche strongly, to the ende that yf there were ony
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng; that they shold 4 come to hym tofore
they wente ony fether, and to fore he rendred? hys
sowle. Thenne, seying? that none came, he snowned? it
agyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, 28
that the horne rofe a sondre in the myddle, and the
vaynes of hys nekke brakyn a sondre, and the 3synowes
of his body stratcheden. And that noys or voyys by
the grace of god? came to the ceres of Charles, whyche was 32
cyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Roland? had blowen it, and
wold haue returned? agyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

1 m ij. 2 orig. concluded. 3 m iij. col. 2.
whyche knewe wel alle the sayt, dystourned hym, in sayeng that Rolande had borne his horns for some wylye beest that he chase do his playesyr; For ofte
tymes he wold blowe hys hornes for lytel thynge, and
that he shold not doubt of nothyng. And thus he dyd
the kyng to understonde that he byleued hym, and made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-
land, leyng in thys sorowe, he pleased hys wonndes also wel as he myght, and streched hymself
on the grasse. Roland stretches himself on the grass.

12 Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, whyche was moche heuy and soroiful for hys brother Roland, whyche was in that necessyte. And anon Roland sayd to hym, “my frende and my brother,
16 I have so grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I have
not drynke to aswage my thurst.

Baldwin comes to him.
Roland asks for water, but Baldwin can find none,
and rides off to fetch Charles.
Roland confesses himself,

24 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that
day whyche they shold fyght were confessyd & commun
youthoute sayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway
were wyth them. Roland, whyche knew hys ende by
entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &
hys hondes loyne?, al stretched in the melew, began
to say thus: “Fayre lord god, my maker, my redemour,
some of the gloryous moder of conforte, thou knowest
1 m ij, back. 2 orig. lefte
praying for mercy
through the merits of Christ,
and for the dangers and troubles he has gone through for the Christian religion.

He prays for the souls of his comrades.

myn entency[on], thou knowest what I have doon for the boute that is in the. by thy grete mercy of whyche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4 and better, with a good and humble hert I requyre the yt tofore the thys day my sawl-tes, synnes, and ygnoraunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde to the trespaces that I have doon to the; but beholde 8 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redeemed me, I beseech the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12 god omnypotent, wyth good wylle I departed out of my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to maj'tene crystendom. Thou knowest that I haue suffre of many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16 & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the, my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy, thou art pyctous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou pardonest marye magdelene and the good thce on the 20 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy, & better yt I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-ham was obeyssaunt to the of his son Isaac, wherfor 24 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-dyent to the commandements of the chyrche: I byluue in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour. 44 O good lord, I beseeche the to pardonne & forgyme 28 alle thym that thys day ben deed in my companye, & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre the to take hede of the paecynce of Job, for which he was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe my self, and take in paecynce alle the sorowe that I suffice, and am therwyth content when it pleaseth the.

1 m ij. back. col. 2. 2 m iiij.
as all this is true, pardon me, comfort my spirit, receive my soul, and bring me to rest perpetual."

When Roland had prayed thus, he set his hands on his body, holding his flesh, and after said these times, "Et in carne mea videbo deum salutatorem meum," and after laid his hands on his eye, and said, "Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt, In this flesh that I hold I shall see my saviour, and these eyes shall behold him;" and after he said that he saw thynges celestial, why which the eye of mankynde might not see, ne the ceres here, ne the hert thynke, the glorye whych god hath made! ready to them that loue hym; and in sayeng, "In manus tuas, domine, commendo spiritum meum," he laid his armes vpon his body in manner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred his soule to god the xvij kalendes of Juyl.

1 Of the vsyon of the deth of Roulland', and of the sorowe of Charles, and how he complayned' hym pyetously, & other maters: capitulolo iiiij

"The day that Roland died, I, Turpin, was celebrating mass before Charles, was made out of this world. And as I was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and herde the angellyes of heuen synge and make grete melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wherfore they soo dyd'. And as I sawe the angellyes mounte in to heuen on lyfe, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a grete noyse and desraye, when they were tofore me in passyng', I sayd to them And in the secret I saw a vision of black spirits passing with great noise,
and I asked them who they were, and they told me of the deaths of Marsurius and Roland.

And I told the vision to Charles, and, while I was speaking, came Baldwin, and told us of the slaughter of our men.

And Charles ordered the army to return, and he himself in front found Roland dead,

and he went and lamented over him bitterly.

and demanded who they were, & what they bare. One of the devylles answered & sayd, 'we bere the kyng Marburyus in to helle, for long a-goon he hath wel deserved it. And Roulland, your trompette, wyth 4 Mychel traungel & many other in his companye, is brought in to Jouye perdurable to heuen.' And as the masse was fyndysed I recounted to charles the vysyon whych I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8 soule of Roulland in to paradys, & the devylles bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, cam hastely and said to charles how the crysten men were dede & bytrayed, and how Rolland was hurte, and in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that every man schold retorn backe, & there was a grete bruyt. But thempourur Charles, to whom thys mater touched at the hert more than to any other, announce hym for to goo thyder; and when he came he fonde Rolland expyred, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage al stretched. And anon Charles fyl down vpon hym, and began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyngh hym on his vysage, rendyngh his clothes, & tormented hys body, & myght not speke a grete whyle. When he was returned to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte of sorowe, he sayd in thys wyse: 'O comforthe of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of lustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be broken, helme of heithe, resemblyng to Indas machabees in prowesse, samblant to sampson in strengthe, & to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuwe, fayr & wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de fendour of crysten men, walle of clersge, staffe to wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Relener of chyrches,
tonge of trouthe, Mowthe wythout lesying; trewe in al
Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
of god, Augmentour of the crysten faytli, & byloned
4 of eueri persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in
to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not deede with
the? O Rouland?, wherfor leuyst thou me heuy &
sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?
8 Alas! sorouful, whycber shal I goo? I praye to almyghty
god that he conserve the; I reuoyre thangelis of heuen
that they be in thy companye; I reuoyre the marters,
of whom thou art of the nombre, yt they wyll receuye
12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departying, as dauyd
dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost
in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
wepynges & tribulaciones. Alle the world is euyl con-
tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brouȝt the in com-
forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
20 and 2 sorowed his neuew Rouland. And he made hys
tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that
nyght, & dyd doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes
for to watche the body of Rouland; & after he dyd?
24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baualme and other
thynges aromatiques, for to conserve the body from euyl
saour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete
28 contemplacion.'

How Olyuer was fouuden slayn, and of the
deth of the sarasyus, & of the deth of
ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v
32

CHARL. ROM. III.
whyche was fastned to four stakes with iiiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handles he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurtwyth spere, sharp darte, quarells, & arowes, & beten wyth staues; he was al to-faisshed and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crystyn began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles swore by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynyms were moche ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the some renewed ony thynge. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr case, wythout doubtynge of ony thynge. and Charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litle whyle there were slayn iiiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng that he myght goo no farther, retorne to rouncyeale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeale hym of the treasion, and that he wold fyght in the quarell. For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. The kyng charles ordneyed a knyght for ganellon, named pynalle, to fyght aynest thryerry. And when these iij champyons were in the lystes, anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytraied them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng ony farther, dyd to take iiiij grete horses, & made to syttte

1 m iiiij, col. 2.  
2 orig. moche.  
3 m iiiij, back.
III. ii. 6.] OF THE PUNISHMENT OF GANELON FOR HIS TREACHERY. 243

on them iiiij stronge men, & bonde ganelon to two horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the other ij horses, & made hym to be drawn with the one hors toward ye eest, & that other toward the weste, that other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was bounde vnto.

How after the thynges afore sayd' charles gaf thankynges & preysynges to god & saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

Wth theexecution was doon of Ganelon and executed, charles & hys people cam in to the place where the frenshe men had be slayn, & 16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frends, & lorde, for to bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye;

Other buryed them in the same place, & somme bare theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth oylle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymytoyres or chircheydres, ryght denouete & pryneypally halowed enmge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth vij bysshops. That one of the cymytoyres was in erles, and that oth[er] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of 28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerboame, Saynt Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Entrope of xayntes had sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were 32 buryed the moost party of the frenshe men slayn and destroyed in rouneycule. Themperour dyd do bere

and Charles has Ganelon drawn in pieces by horses.

The French army attend to their dead contrades:

some they bury,

others they enbalm and take with them.

Two cemeteries are made, one at Arles, the other at Bordeaux, where the French dead are buried.

1 in iiiij, back, col. 2.
Roland is buried at Blois, at the Church of St. Roman.

Oliver and others are buried at Bordeaux.

Charles gives all the land for seven miles round to the church of St. Roman, for the sake of Roland, and appoints masses for the dead.

At Arles are buried Samson, Naymes, and others.

Constantine’s body is taken to Rome.

---

rolland, the gloryous marter, vpon two mules coner, wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the chyrche of saynt Romayn, the whyche he had edeyted and founded wyth chanonnes reguler, he dyde rychely burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence; & on hye, ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at hys feet he dyd do sette his home of ynuorye. Not wythstondyng, after, the home was taken aweye and 8 borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaux. At bourdeaux were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, kyng of Fryse, Ogyer, kyng of denmark; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne; Garyn, duc of Lorayne, & many other. As for Eda 12 rus, kyng of bourdeaux; Englerius, kyng of guyan; lambert, kyng of borges, and galerus reygnant, with vm other, charles gaf xi C vnces of siluer of money that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16 many robes and mete to poure peple, for saucyon of their soules. and al the bonne seuen myle aboute he gaf to the chyrche of saynt Romayn, and maad it subgette to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenauntes 20 and the see ayenst the sayd terytorye, he gaf semblably to the sayd chyrche for charyte & lone of Rolland, and ordeyned it so for ever. and on the day of their pas- syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold every 24 yere perpetuellly xxx poure men be fedde and clothed competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that were deede in spayne for the crystyn fayth. In Arles 28 was buryed the counte of lengres; samson, duc of bourgoyne; Naymes, duc of banyere; Arnold de bellandus, and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyne knyghtes, wyth ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- uoste of 2 Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other Romayns, and for y the remedye of theyr soules them- perour gaf in arles for almesse xi C vnces of syluer

1 m v. 2 m v, col. 2.
and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

How Charles wente in to Almoyne, where he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperially: capitulo

After the thynge afore sayd, Themperour Charles and Turpyyn, wyth the other, came and passed by vyenne; & there Turpyyn tharchebyshopp, a moche holy man, abode, for he was wyry and moche febled of the payne that he had for the fayth in spayne. And Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemalle al the nobles and the moost grettest lorde of hys contreye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to gyue thankynge to god & to saynt Denys of the vyr- torye that he had obtayned in his tyme vpon the sar- syns, paynyms, & myscreauntes. And after that he had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thapostle and saynt Clement the pope had 1 doon in tyme passed, he maad constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold be for y° tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng

He ordains that all kings of France shall be crowned at St. Denis,

and all bishops should be subject to the priest of that church.

was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordyned that every possessour in al y° nacyon of fraunce shold gyne & be bounden to gyne to the chyrche of saynt denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money courant yerely & perpetuall, & al they that shold gyue it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

Also that every person should pay to it yearly four pence,
and any bondmen who paid this should be free.

He prays for the souls of his soldiers.

St. Denis appears to him,

and declares that all who pay the annual pence to his church, shall have forgiveness of their sins.

And this payment was called the Frank of St. Denis,

whence the country has its name of France.

and any bondmen who paid this should be free.

He prays for the souls of his soldiers.

St. Denis appears to him,

and declares that all who pay the annual pence to his church, shall have forgiveness of their sins.

And this payment was called the Frank of St. Denis,

whence the country has its name of France.

condycyon, he wold they shold be franke & free of condycyon. And after anone these thynge ordyned, he went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he wold praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y were deele of the crysten fayth in the tyne that he had regned that they myght be saued, and that the payne that they had taken my3t be to them the crowne of mar-8 tyrdom in the glorie perdurable; & in semblable wyse he prayed for al them that wold1 paye gladly the pens aforesayd to his chyrche. As god wold, that nyght folowyng saynt denys appyered to hym, & saydf to hym in thys manere: "O kyng, understonde me, knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker, & he hath graunted that alle they that have been aynest the sarasyns with the hauke pardon of al theyr trespaces, 16 & that wylyngly shal paye the penyes for the edefycacyon of my chyrche & augmentyng the servyce of god, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20 recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause they shold wyth a good wylle paye the penyes that he had ordyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of saynt denys, by cause that he was free and quyte of al 24 seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After came the custome that that londe whyche was called Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is named at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28 free of al seruage aynest al peple; and therfore the lordes of Fraunce for this cause emounge al crysten men owen to be honoured & praised.

1 v. back, col. 2.
Charles retires to Acon, where he dies.

The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:

capitulo viij

Charles contynued gloriously his lyf in vertuouse operacyons, And whan he felte the declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he had tofore doon moche good, & enobled a chyrche of our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd make, and gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of sayntes, of gold & syluer, & other precyous meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes he was called the grete; & he had iij sons theame lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles, the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had iij doughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had ordeyned for specyal londe kyng of guyan, he lefte to hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes & the gloryous ende of Charles, & how he was sauëd in heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn, archebyshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, "I Turpyn, archebyshop of Raynes, was in veyne in the chyrche tofore thanbler, & was rauysshed in sayeng the psalm, 'Deus in adiutoryum' 2 3 meum intende.' I sawe a compayne of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I demaunded hym wytther al they wente. the whyche, beyng constrayued to answere, sayde, 'we alle goo to Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng. And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere in to helle to perpetuel damnacyon.' Thenne I sayd

1 m vj.  2 orig. adiutoryum.  3 m vj, col. 2,
to hym, 'I adiuere the by the vertue of the name of our Lord Jhesu cryst that, wythoute fayllnyng, after that ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.' Anone after, or he coude fynysshe his psalme, the devylles cam retournynge ageyn in the same ordre that they wente. "An thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to before, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?' that same devyl answered, that 'James of galyce, frende to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan we were redy for to receyue his soule, and had egally departec his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo make in the name of hym, that his good dedes surmounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght haue noo thynge no parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyll vanysshed awaye," & soo he loste hym vysyon. Thus 16 Charles, in the moneth of feueryere, renderd his soule to god holyly. For after that he retorned fro spayn he dyd but languysshe & appayre in hym body toward hym deth; & in hym ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20 to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that the glorious archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyficacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre-24 paracyon of hym syge in heuen. His sepulture was moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world, noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it my3t not be amended, and ouer hym tombe was maad an 28 arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, comprysed by grete sceyne. & thyder came Leo the pope, accompaniedyth prynces Romayns, archebysshops, byssshops, Abbotes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32 lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

m vj. back.
a chayer of gold moche fayre and shynying, and resembled wel a notable Inge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospelles in

4 fayre letters of gold, & wyth the ryȝt hande he helde the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the sceptre Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed shold not endyne to eyther syde, hit was vnderset wyth a chayne of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys heed raught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made, & the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and after 12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

iska The excusacyon of thauctour.

This work contains three books, divided into chapters.

The first book tells of the beginning of France.

The second book of the duel between Oliver and Fyerabras.

1 m vij, back, col. 2.  
2 m vij.
and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and put in surete, & after saund fynably by florypes, the curtoys daughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4 relyques recouured, and other maters of grete mercuyllies. The iiij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne & galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8 constytuecyons of sauacyon, wyth many batayllies doon by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson of Ganelon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12 peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and wryton. and 1 after that ony persone wyl here or rede of thys matere, the table made atte begynnynge shal 16 shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or rede of y° werk in thys book composed.

1 Thenuoye of thauectour: ca. x

A

S I haue sayd at the begynnyng of thys present 20 werke, the escopytures and feates somme haue beene reduced in wryting for to be in memorye,
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs enuysample in ensyewing and folowyng them, & they 24 that haue doon enyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for to come to the sorte of helthe. For the compune vnderstondeyng is more contente to reteyne parables and examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28 auctortye, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstondeyng; and also semblably thystoryes spekyng of our lorn These cryst, of hys myrales, & of his vertuous subgettes, enevy man oujt gladly to here and retenne them. 32 & it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

1 m vij, col. 2.
man to fore named. Maister henry bolounyer, chanonne of lausanne, I have been Ineyted to translate & redynse in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced, as

4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd book I haue taken & drawen oute of a book named myrrour hystoryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frenshe.

8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book, I haue reduced it in to prose, substancely wythout fryllynge, by ordynaunce of chapytres & partyes of the sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.

12 And yf in al thys book I haue mes-prysed or spoken otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good understondlyng to al makers & clerkes, I demande correxyon and amendement, and of the defaultes par-

16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my wytte & vnderstondlyng. whyche is ryght lytel, can not vitre ne wryte thys matere withoute errour. Neuer-

20 theles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacyon. To the whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly

24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred & requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn, Maister wylliam dau2heny, one of the tresorer of the

28 Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord, late of noble memoreye, kyng Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy. To reduce al these sayd hystories in to our Englyssh- tongues, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn, prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to

And I pray all to

of Master Bolo-

myner,

Canon of Lau-

sanne.

The first and third

book I have trans-

lated from the

Speccturn Hus-

toriate, and the

second from an

old French

romance.

I pray all who

may find a fault

in it to pardon it,

and attribute to

my want of learn-

ing, not my good-

will.

And J, William

Caxton, have, at

the instance of

Sir W. Daubeny,

translated this

book into English

and 1 m vij. back. 2 m vij. back. col. 2.
pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[ilation and reducyng, bysechynge theym that shal fynde faute to correcte it, & in so doyng they shal deserue thankynge, & I shal praye god for them, who brynge them and me, 4 after this short and transytorye lyf, to everlastyng blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xviij day of Iuy, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, 8 And the yere of our Lord MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted the fyrst day of decemhre, the same of our Lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenthe.

 Explicit per William Caxton.
NOTES.

Page 1, line 12.  "hye hystoryes:" Fr. *histoires haultaines.*

p. 1, l. 13.  Fr. *lentendement commun est mieux content a retenir pour la gynagination localle, a la quelle il est subzmis.*

p. 1, l. 15.  "ghadly:" Fr. *voluntiers.*

p. 2, l. 9.  Fr. *peult estre que je ieuusse bien este informe.*

p. 2, l. 11.  See *Introduction.*

p. 2, l. 27.  The "Book of the noble Hystoryes of Kyngge Arthur and of certeyn of his Knyghtes," reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knigght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxii bookes, chapytred and eniprynted in the abbey westraestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.

p. 16, l. 22.  "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *cellye peuple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu.*

p. 17, l. 16.  "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary.*

p. 17, l. 33.  "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moulst largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*

p. 18, l. 11.  Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement : par ta haultaine paissance ie demande.*

p. 19, l. 27.  [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence.  See Sege of Melayne, l. 27, and note.

p. 19, l. 31.  "antentykly:" Fr. *auctentiquement.*

p. 19, l. 32.  "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer bapitioyres couenablement.*

p. 21, l. 23.  "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion.*


p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. quant a la pitance.
p. 27, l. 12. "iiij hors schein:" the Fr. original adds, venans de la forge.
p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, en fait.
p. 29, l. 12. "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. frequentoit.
p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystons:" Fr. mault ample et robuste.
p. 29, l. 30. "he etc not for the moost parte,&c.:" Fr. ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venaison rostie.
p. 32, l. 21. "he enclosed in Iustycie:" Fr. soies enclos en iustee.
p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: ilz se vont trouver en quy gran bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encore a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passier en quy iour. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. depuis sont veus ces oycculx.
p. 34, l. 24. In the original, Constantinople.
p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is au monnemen quon tira. The French monument is evidently a mistake.
p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. il est ordonne que ou moy de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans ou deust venir veoir, &c.
p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. selon que ien pourray concepyoir.
p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. a rome.
p. 39, l. 9. "adioniste:" add. Fr. adioindre. On the word adjust, as representing the two Latin forms adjustare and adjustare, see Dr. Murray’s paper in the Philological Society's Transactions, 1880.
p. 39, l. 10. "I have not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, ou liure competent, the last word meaning containing.
p. 39, l. 29. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to Sir Ferumbras, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the Sowdone of Babylone should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the Sowdone will be found in Dr. Hausknecht’s Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in Roland and Otuel, see my edition, note to l. 688.
p. 40, l. 30. Compare Sir Ferumbras, l. 78.
p. 41, l. 13. "as enyl and olde:" Fr. comme mauvais vieillast.
p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytw:" Fr. ie soie fugi.
p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the Sowdone of Babylone, pp. 4 et seq.
p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur:" in the original the same.
p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. qui as.
p. 48, l. 20. See note to Sir Ferumbras, l. 988.
p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloix de fin or.
p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. logis.
p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thyss hour, &c:" Fr. de cette heur ie vous ottroic.
p. 50, l. 18. "Andrew:" Fr. Andrieu, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in Sir Ferumbras, l. 310 et seq., and the notes.
p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. comme entre ses dens. Cf. Sir Ferumbras, 322.
p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys glone in synge of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel; compare Roland and Otuel, l. 1356, and the Song of Roland, l. 482, and notes.
p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to P. Floeman, B. v. 651.
p. 52, l. 22. "he setted nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has ou.
p. 54, l. 18. Compare Chanson de Roland, 376. "Jamais n'iert hum qui encontre lui vaillet."
p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. tu es bien de busse main party.
p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" barils: "botelles" in the S Borrow, l. 1185: "costrel" in Sir Ferumbras, l. 510, on which see note and Intro., p. xii: at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "baryles."
p. 57, l. 30. "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has dieule.
p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. cuir de capadoc.
p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" i. e. in comparison with himself.
p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" i. e. I am sure.
p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of Ferumbras' swords are not given in Sir Ferumbras or the S Borrow, but in the verse Fierabras are said to have been Florance, Baptism, and Garbain.
p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:""] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.
p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans, Munificans*, and *Anrisas*.

p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durandal, Masqueme*, and *Courtain*.

p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.

p. 60, l. 8. "bended:" bound, banded; Fr. *bende*.

p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" i.e. seeing, considering.

p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu tennises*, i.e. thou thinkest of.

p. 62, l. 18. "utterance:" Fr. *a outlarne*.

p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cest au cop*.

p. 62, l. 34. "bowed and entred:" Fr. *ploiez et entrez*.

p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonne:" Fr. *troncone*, i.e. broken to pieces.

p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant pcece*, i.e. for a great while.

p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun he before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.

p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.

p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, gladiator; a Bucler playnge, gladiatura. *De* Swerde & *y* bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleas* mid swordes." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.

p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *reioyer*.

p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.

p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.

p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver’s drinking any of the balm in *Sir Fierabras* or the *Svedan*. See Dr. Hansknecht’s note to the latter, l. 1191.

p. 68, l. 29. "beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Fierabras*, p. xii.

p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver’s horse.

p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i.e. out of, away from.

p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "*viij*" read "*xiij*.

p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "*terrestre*.

p. 71, l. 21. "Longyns." On the *legal of Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat’s notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.

p. 71, l. 31. "thou:" Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines you and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.

p. 72, l. 6. "for hys gloryous medytacyon." In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. "Nenertheles:" Fr. *touzefois*.

p. 72, l. 16. "soo coneytous in smytynyng:" Fr. *connotent et affoibly*.

p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" i.e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*. 
p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. le faire une puche.
p. 74, l. 5. "vylte:" Fr. ville.
p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See Sir Ferumbras,
ll. 2506, 2500, and Glossary.
p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frussed eynl:" Fr. cassa et
rompi mallement.
p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. et se coururent. The suc-
ceeding passage is awkawardly expressed in the translation. The
original reads: et fut premièrent frappe Olivier sur son escu par telle
fierte, qu'au pres le poinz de Olivier a mis en pieces son escu, which is
not much better. The he, of course, is Ferumbras.
p. 78, l. 16. "enforced:" exerted. Compare Sir Ferumbras, 782—
"Pan Firumbraj enforcevde hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. ung faule dart. Properly a hand-bill.
See Sir Ferumbras, l. 966, and note—
"falsarz au iéperv dart."
The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.
p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. crapaulc, a toad.
p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The Catholicon
Anglicum gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); pynus (pinus
fractus eius A.)." Apple was the ordinary word for the cones of the
pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his
fruite is great Bouleens or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and
are called pine-apples." See other instances in my note in the
Catholicon.
p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the
authority of the original, which reads: "a force de coup et de trais."
p. 81, l. 28. "faus darte." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete:" this does not at all convey the
meaning of the original, which runs: sans le dire se peut entendre.
p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before makyng makes the
sentence rather awkward.
p. 82, l. 27. "Amanclys:" Fr. Amandis.
p. 82, l. 35. In the Sowdone it is Roland and Oliver that are captured :
see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In Sir Ferumbras, 984 :
"at awayling of an hulle."
p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. morfondus, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.
p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-
Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdone, l. 1711.
"is wounde to enservche and saye.
At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne taste is wounde."
p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadnyral." Laban in the Sowdone throughout.
CHARL. ROM. III.
p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brillant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neneue bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"

p. 87, l. 6. "knayght:" Fr. *domoiseau*.

p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.

p. 87, l. 30. "yeman:" Fr. *vassal*.

p. 88, l. 10. "brallant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises his father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.

p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.

p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.

p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soubmis a faute fortune*.

p. 89, l. 31. "what I make:" Fr. *que ic fays*, i.e. what I am doing, how I fare.

p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, 1, 5789, *et seq*.

p. 90, l. 28. "whych he was made of one of the fayrye:" Fr. *faict dene fae*.

p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.

p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.

p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypedes had ennye to here hym speke:" Fr. *cult enuie les ayr parler*, i.e. had a great desire to hear them speak.

p. 91, l. 31. "dyshoneste:" Fr. *inhonestete*.

p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" i.e. on the other hand, again.

p. 92, l. 21. "charlemaynys:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.

p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.

p. 93, l. 1. "wel ferre for to be outhe:" i.e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be outhe."

p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, 1, 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, 1, 1723.

p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdone* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she

"a rope to hem lete down geoð
That aboveñ was tyeðe faste."

p. 94, l. 13. "a garyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i.e. an enclosed yard or space.

p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4137, and Glossary.

p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.

p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: se
daunenture quelque, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubt:" Fr. en aultrve doubte, i. e. fear.

p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admiral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to Sir Ferumbras, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the Sowdone, Introd.

p. 96, l. 6. "lucftar:" in the French versions of the romance Lucifer throughout.

p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. dommaige.

p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: et plusieurs aultrres tierriennes victoires.

p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned:" Fr. detenu.

p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the Sowdone, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.

p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see Sir Ferumbras, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdone, l. 1888.


p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.

p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to Sir Ferumbras, l. 988, and the Sowdone, l. 875.

p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare Sir Ferumbras, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the Sowdone, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.

p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in Sir Ferumbras it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantrible, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."

p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quyttte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quyttte."


p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florlysshed." Compare Roland and Otuel, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:

"He sitts his dapers Imange,  
With white berde large and lange  
Faire of fleche & f-lle.  
With a floreschede thonwange,  
Oure noble kyngge pat es so strange,  
His doghyety men imelle."

p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed:" Fr. se font baiser et accolier.


p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to have made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. tu me coudas il na pas gaires bon faite meuser en les folies.
p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. na plus cure de joeur.
p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. mis en point = arm yourselves completely.
p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted?, &c.:" Fr. trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse.
p. 121, p. 18. Fr. tousjours a la cue dang viel chien vous tenez.
p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, il vient la bien a point, car le larron.
p. 124, l. 29. "hys spouse that shold be:" Fr. son espoue adevoir. Compare p. 134, l. 27.
p. 128, l. 11. "doubtef:" feared. Fr. redoute.
p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. altoient en leur repaire.
p. 130, l. 18. "lefe not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, et pour estre esquartelle presentemen il ne se fast tenu qu'il ne prist celuy sarrazin.
p. 130, l. 23. "whyche wyth theyr feets and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c.:": Fr. que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in Syr Ferumbras, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. si hardis et desmesurez.
p. 134, l. 27. "hir lone and tocomyng husbandf:" Fr. son espoue adevoir. Compare p. 124, l. 29.
p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. ne vous fies point que si meurt.
p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete facyon:" Fr. morreau de grant fasson.
p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. aprez qu'il se fut recouvre.
p. 136, l. 32. "Inconncuynts:" Fr. inconseuens = damage.
p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hyo voyes. &c.:" Fr. lay cria a haute voix qu'il lay plaste de la venir buisser, en disant que selle vinoit pour la pousse des barons que son pere ladmiral seroit vue flous en son damgier. The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in Sir Ferumbras help much to make it any clearer.
p. 142, l. 3. "at utterance:" Fr. a outurance = exceedingly.
p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothynge yet:" Fr. ne vous esmaies encore.
p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. beurrage, a draught.
p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. car ilz voudent a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.
p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the Sowdone Balan smashes Mahound.

p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystronble vs at our souper:" Fr. les francoeys nous veulent faire refroidier notre soupper = wish to make our supper cold.

p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynymes must re-
torne:" Fr. pourquoi force fut aux auttres, &c.

p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoritye:" Fr. puis quil est
homme de audiencie.

p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volun-
teed.

p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. greve de sa
personne.

p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. ung your entre les
auttres.

p. 149, l. 17. "at al adventure:" Fr. a son adventure.

p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted enteryly:" Fr. il dubita entierement =
feared greatly, or in his heart. See Glossary.

p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. platz = broad.

p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. lattaint du trauers
du col.

p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr.
de ta part.

p. 154, l. 13. Fr. Et quant ladmiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son
entendement. I can make nothing of "the ethrolytes."

p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in Sir Ferumbras, 3823, Malyngras; in the
Sowdone, 2145, Espyward.

p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in
the world:" Fr. quil non y a point de pareil.

p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, en passant, or
by the way. Fr. en venant vous debuez scœmoir.

p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the
banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical
versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdone,
l. 2810.

p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, dantefulye, evi-
dently misread by Caxton.

p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned:" Fr. comme suis ie determiné.

p. 161, l. 29. "as a theef attaynt:" Fr. comme hurron proune.

p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. ne plaiese pas a dieu que iamais.

p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. a ce mouvement vous vicatres.

p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreannte, &c.:" Fr. reclame recreant et
trou reboute.

p. 169, l. 3. "bowed & his hede:" Fr. baissa le menton.

p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. dany viel serpent crote
et mant endurey.

p. 170, l. 27. "confonon:" so in the original French.
p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.;" Fr. qui avoit
fuiete sa grossine de deu fils, that is, who had given birth to two sons.

p. 172, l. 11. "facon:" = state of affairs.

p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doyng:" = while this was happening.

p. 175, l. 32. "Amyote." Amyote, Sir Ferunbras, 4663; Barrok,
in the Sowdone, 2939.

p. 177, l. 10. In the Sowdone, 3043, Richard is left as governor of
Manrible.

p. 177, l. 35. "he sowned, &c.;:" Fr. il pasma de dueil et cria comme
tout hors du sens.

p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused:" Fr. bien abusez = greatly deceived or
mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "Abuser.
To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile.
'Sabuser, To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c."

Cotgrave.

p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng Coldroe tempeste? hym." Here Caxton
has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: et auec huy le
riet roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brillant de monnaire: tempeste being
really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.

p. 183, l. 5. "better adusyed:" Fr. qu'il soit descusle(?).

p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. regarderent. See note to p. 102, l. 6.

p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the Sowdone Floripas first sees the
French army advancing.

p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. en l’arbre.

p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. a peu de
fait qu’il ne fut emuige de ses paroles.

p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyng:" Fr. par presumption = by sup-
position.

p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. sans faute = without fail.

p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.;" Fr. et les tiendraient si de prez
quelz ne seieurent que faire.

p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. grant abusion.

p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.;:" Fr. qu’il ny avoit
point dabuslion en croie et adorer les diste religies.

p. 202, l. 22. "al ranysshed:" Fr. tout rong.

p. 204, l. 7. "overthrew to the erthe:" Fr. vont tomber par terre.

p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and relenced many and dyners
cyriques:" Fr. il fonda, renta, et reuenu plusieurs et diverses egli"es.

p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht’s note to the Sowdon, 1. 1888.

p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not leue herby:" would not stop at this.
Fr. ne se vouloit tenir a coca.

p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. jist auternes exper-
imentations.

p. 213, l. 5. "took hede;" Fr. seu prist garde = took notice.

p. 214, l. 31. Fr. cule qui estoient presens et leurs successors fussent
fruns et libere; les tailables fussent a leurs lors comme quisf fussent
condicions;"
NOTES TO pp. 215—251.

p. 215, l. 35. "fellow:" Fr. compagnon de escoc.
p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makyng grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. sans faire grandes rebellions.
p. 221, l. 17. "demauded" synguler persone ayeinst a persone:" Fr. demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne.
p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. si villement.
p. 231, l. 1. "surprysed:" overcome, taken. Fr. surpris.
p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads montu.
p. 242, l. 6. "to-faisshed and broken:" Fr. il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu.
Glossary.

Abuse, s. 60/30, deceit, error.
Abuse, v. 206/19, deceive.
Abylled, pt. s. 50/11, dressed, prepared.
Accomplysshe, v. 125/34, complete, finish.
Accumyled, pa. par. 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
Acoward, v. 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
Adiouste, v. 39/9, to add, append.
Adoubed, pi. par. 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.
Affectuously, adv. 13/12, affectionately, with affection.
Alowed, pa. par. 49/20, praised.
Ampull, s. 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
And, conj. 101/15, if.
Anenst, prep. 246/29, towards, as regards.
Appeledd, pt. s. 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.
Araught, pt. s. 76/28, reached to, touched.
Arbalastre, s. 104/12, a cross-bow.
Aresonned, pa. par. 52/20, questioned.
Attaynedd, pt. s. 190/19, reached, struck.
Attones, adv. 56/14, at once, at the same time.
Aualedd, pt. s. 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/31, let down, lowered.
Bacynet, s. 32/15, a small helmet.

Barat, s. 231/35, fraud, deceit.
Baston, s. 182/4, a staff.
Batayl, s. 232/33, a battalion, a division of an army.
Bayned, pa. par. 89/20, bathed, plunged.
Baynes, s. pl. 95/20, baths.
Becke, s. 20/30, a beak, bill.
Bchoeful, v. 145/25, advisable, advantageous.
Belfraye, s. 175/7, a tower. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. Barsepay.
Blynefelde, pt. pl. 82/1, blindfolded. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. Blyndfeyld.
Bowedraught, s. 189/31, a bowshot.
Boystous, a. 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.
Broched, pl. s. 101/35, spurred.
Buseage, s. 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. buseage.

Camuse, a. 94/27, short, thick-nosed.
Chauffeord, pa. par. 95/20, warmed, heated.
Complyces, s. pl. 164/33, accomplices.
Confanon, s. 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
Confysked, pa. par. 21/34, confiscated.
Conuenably, adv. 19/32, suitably, fittingly.
Coroherc, v. 24/9, to strengthen.
Crapauld, s. 79/20, a toad.
Cremeur, s. 46/19, dread.

"Cremeur, fear, dread." — Cotgrave.

Cresme, s. 29/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. Creme.

Dedycdi, 2x1. par. lG/35, dedicated.

Delyuer, a. 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern clever.

Depesshe, v. imp. 53/9, hasten, hurry.

Derked', pi-s. 211/12, was eclipsed.

Descerkled', 2nd. s. 102/7, was cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.

Descouuerd, jjw. 75/26, uncovered, deprived.

Desmaylled, pa. par. 69/10, deprived of the mail or plates.

Disrenge, v. 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.

Dyssymyled', pi-par. 13, 22, disguised.

Dystourncd', pt. s. 237/1, turned aside.

Dystrouble, v. 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.

Egal, s. 59/2, equal, match.

Empessed', pa. par. 219/14, hindered, obstructed.

Enforced', pt. s. 78/16, exerted.

Engyne, s. 165/21, craft, art, skill.

Enhardyed', pt. pl. 192/22, encouraged, took courage.

Ensywejng, v. 250/24, following.

Enterbraccd', pt. pl. 113/25, embraced.

Enterprenour, s. 166/10, enterpriser, actor.

Entertene, v. 46/32, to treat, behave towards.

Entyer, a. 237/32, earnest, hearty.

Entyercd', pa. par. 244/27, interred.


Escury, v. 77/27, to call upon, invoke.

Faus, a. 79/18, See note.

Faysyble, a. 49/34, possible to be done, feasible.

Felounye, s. 109/30, daring, recklessness.

Fere, v. 140/5, to frighten.

Ferfully, adv. 193/32, in fear, timidly.

Fette, pt. s. 223/26, fetched.

Fliese, s. 91/1, a fleece.

Florysshe, v. 36/3, to bud, flower.

Florysshed, pa. par. 108/23, flowering, long and wide.

Formosyte, s. 198/10, beauty.

Frequented', pt. s. 29/12, made frequent use of.

Geayler, s. 89/1, jailor.

Gianes, sb. pl. 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.

Gree, s. 96/10, pleasure, delight.

Greued, pa. par. 147/26, hurt, injured.

Guarysshed', pa. par. 17/16, cured, healed.

Habylle, a. 169/32, active, nimble.

Harnoys, s. 105/34, equipments, outfit.

Honung, pr. par. 36/10, hovering.

Iape, v. 60/22, play, mock.

Ionques, s. pl. 200/1, rushes. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. Ionkett.

Iourneye, s. 216/9, a day's journey.

Lawhe, v. 53/12, to laugh.

Lawhyng, a. 90/15, laughing.

Lesynges, s. pl. 106/8, lies.

Lethoth, pr. s. 212/24, causes. Lethoth the note = tells you, sends notice to you.

Lette, pa. par. 219/14, obstructed, hindered.
Loange, s. 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. louange.

Logyce, s. 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. logis.

Loos, s. 85/3, glory, praise.

Lyces, s. pi. 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (Cotgrave) here used for the lines of the camp.

Lyznage, s. 19/23, clan, party.

Maistresse, s. 94/19, governess.

Matte, a. 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to Sir Ferumbras.

Maulgre, prep. 234/26, in spite of.

Meddle, v. 92/35, engage, contend.

Mesprysed, pa. par. 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.

Moyen, s. 213/33, a means, a plan.

Moyre, s. 203/25, walls, fortifications.

Muse, v. 119/9, to be confounded.

Ouer, adv. 30/12, everywhere.

Ouer alle; passim, ubiquique, genus loquenti est ubiquae.—Cath. Anglicum.

Ouerthrew, pt. s. 141/18, fell over.

Parents, s. pl. 160/3, relations.

Pourchace, v. 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to Sir Ferumbras, 2603.

Prestly, adv. 94/35, readily, quickly.

Priend, pa. par. 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.

Purchase, pa. par. 131/8, obtained, procured.

Putayne, s. 180/1, a harlot.

Puterye, s. 181/35, harlotry. Fr. puterie.

Pynapple, s. 80/22, a fir. See note.

Raught, pt. s. 81/18, reached to, touched.

Rejoye, v. 64/32, renew.

Relenud, pt. s. 130/24, lifted up, raised.

Remyed, pt. s. 208/28, placed again, brought back.

Rented, pt. s. 206/18, endowed.

Repayre, s. 129/13, retreat, return.

Rescoweck, pa. par. 72/35, rescued.

Retcheth, 3 pr. s. 22/3, cares, reck.

Ryuage, s. 158/3, shore, bank.

Saleweck, pt. s. 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.

Setteck, pt. s. 52/22, set, thought.

Share, pt. s. 76/28, cut.

Sommyers, s. pl. 105/23, pack-horses.

Soulded, pa. par. 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.

Sperhawke, s. 193/32, a sparrow-hawk.

Stratcheden, pt. pl. 236/31, were stretched or strained.

Sudarye, s. 37/14, a handkerchief; commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. and note.

Surquydrous, a. 74/10, proud, haughty.

Swolowe, s. 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See Cath. Anglicum, s. v. a Swalle of ye. See.

Symylacres, s. pl. 206/11, images.

Symykares, s. pl. 206/11, images.

Synege, s. pl. 229/3, seats, places.

Tabellyons, s. pl. 214/32. See note.

Tabouryns, s. pl. 22/27, labourers.

Thwarte, prep. 44/6, across.

To-frusshed, pa. par. 75/20, broken to pieces.

Trauylledek, pa. par. 103/7, worn out with labour.

Tronchonnek, pa. par. 63/1, broken to pieces.

Trufendeck, pt. s. 119/15, played, mocked.
Tyerce, s. 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.

Underset, pa. par. 249/7, propped up, supported.

Ynnethe, adv. 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.

Vlaynsly, adv. 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.

Wendo, pt. s. 36/13, thought, intended.

Wesshe, pt. s. 66/21, washed.

Wynbrowes, s. pl. 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of eyenbrowes.

Ymbre, s. 37/35, ember.
Early English Text Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH